MY PEUGEOT 308

HANDBOOK

Download on the App Store

GET IT ON Google Play

PEUGEOT

Access to the Handbook

MOBILE APPLICATION

Install the **Scan MyPeugeot App** (content available offline).

Then select:

– the vehicle,

– the issue period corresponding to the date of 1st registration of the vehicle.

ONLINE

Visit the **PEUGEOT** website and select the '**MyPeugeot**' section to view or download the handbook or go to the following address:

http://public.servicebox.peugeot.com/APddb/

Scan this QR Code for direct access.

Select:

– the language,

– the vehicle and body style,

– the issue period of the handbook corresponding to the date of 1st registration of the vehicle.

This symbol indicates the latest information available.

Welcome

Thank you for choosing a Peugeot 308.
This document presents the key information and recommendations required for you to be able to explore your vehicle in complete safety. We strongly recommend familiarising yourself with this document and the Maintenance and Warranty Guide.
Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.
The descriptions and illustrations are for guidance only.
Automobiles PEUGEOT reserves the right to modify the technical specifications, equipment and accessories without having to update this document.
If ownership of your vehicle is transferred, please ensure this **Handbook** is passed on to the new owner.

Key

Safety warning

Additional information

Environmental protection feature

Left-hand drive vehicle

Right-hand drive vehicle

Location of equipment/button indicated using a black area

Overview ■

Labels 4

Eco-driving ■

1 Instruments

Digital instrument panel 7
Warning and indicator lamps 8
Indicators 14
Manual test 17
Total distance recorder 17
Lighting dimmer 17
Trip computer 18

2 Access

Electronic key with remote control function and built-in key, 19
Keyless Entry and Starting 21
Back-up procedures 23
Doors 25
Boot 25
Alarm 26
Electric windows 28

3 Ease of use and comfort

PEUGEOT i-Cockpit 30
Front seats 30
Steering wheel adjustment 33
Mirrors 33
Rear seats (saloon) 35
Rear seats (SW) 35
Interior fittings 37
Front armrest 38
Boot fittings (hatchback) 40
Boot fittings (SW) 40
Warning triangle (stowing) 41
Heating and Ventilation 42
Manual air conditioning 43
Dual-zone automatic air conditioning 44
Front demisting - defrosting 46
Rear screen demisting/defrosting 47
Panoramic sunroof 47
Courtesy lamps 48
Interior ambient lighting 49

4 Lighting and visibility

Exterior lighting control stalk 50
Automatic illumination of headlamps 51
Automatic headlamp dipping 52
Guide-me-home and welcome lighting 53
Direction indicators 53
Headlamp beam height adjustment 54
Wiper control stalk 54
Changing a wiper blade 56
Automatic wipers 56

5 Safety

General safety recommendations 58
Hazard warning lamps 58
Emergency or assistance call 59
Horn 61
Electronic stability control (ESC) 62
Seat belts 64
Airbags 66
Child seats 68
Deactivating the front passenger airbag 70
ISOFIX child seats 74
Child lock 79

6 Driving

Driving recommendations 81
Starting/switching off the engine 82
Manual parking brake 85
Electric parking brake 86
Hill start assist 89
5-speed manual gearbox 89
6-speed manual gearbox 90
Automatic gearbox EAT6 90
Automatic gearbox EAT8 93
Driver Sport Pack 96
Gear efficiency indicator 97
Stop & Start 97
Under-inflation detection 99
Driving and manoeuvring aids - General recommendations 100
Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation 102
Speed limiter 104
Cruise control 106
Adaptive Cruise Control 107
Active Safety Brake with Distance Alert and Intelligent emergency braking assistance 112
Distraction detection 114
Active Lane Keeping Assistance 115
Blind Spot Monitoring 119

Active Blind Spot Monitoring System 120
Parking sensors 121
Visiopark 1 122
Park Assist 124

Practical information 7

Compatibility of fuels 131
Refuelling 131
Diesel misfuel prevention 132
Snow chains 133
Very cold climate screen 133
Towing device 134
Towing device with quickly detachable towball 135
Energy economy mode 139
Fitting roof bars 140
Bonnet 141
Engine compartment 141
Checking levels 142
Checks 144
AdBlue® (BlueHDi) 146
Free-wheeling 148
Advice on care and maintenance 148

In the event of a breakdown 8

Tool kit 150
Temporary puncture repair kit 151
Spare wheel 157
Changing a bulb 160
Changing a fuse 166
12 V battery 169
Towing the vehicle 173
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 174

Technical data 9

Engine technical data and towed loads 176
Petrol engines 177
Diesel engines 179
Dimensions 181
Identification markings 183

PEUGEOT Connect Radio 10

First steps 184
Steering mounted controls 185
Menus 186
Applications 187
Radio 187
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio 189
Media 189
Telephone 191
Settings 194
Frequently asked questions 196

PEUGEOT Connect Nav 11

First steps 198
Steering mounted controls 199
Menus 199
Voice commands 201
Navigation 204
Connected navigation 207
Applications 209
Radio 211
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio 213
Media 213
Telephone 214
Settings 217
Frequently asked questions 219

Alphabetical index ■

Access to additional videos

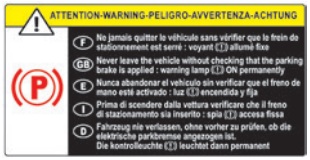
Labels

"Deactivating the front passenger airbag" section:

"ISOFIX mountings" section:

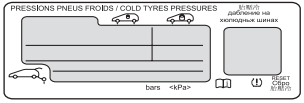
"Child lock" section:

"Electric parking brake" section:

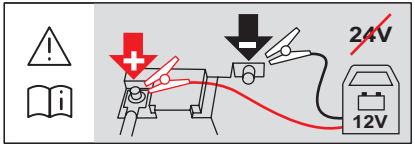


"Stop & Start", "Bonnet" and "Changing a bulb" sections:

"Temporary puncture repair kit" and "Spare wheel" sections:

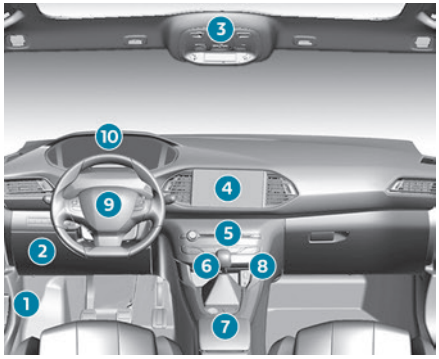


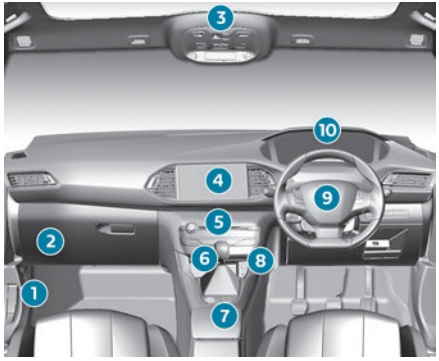
"12V battery" section:



Instruments and controls

These illustrations and descriptions are intended as a guide. The presence and location of some elements vary depending on the version or trim level.



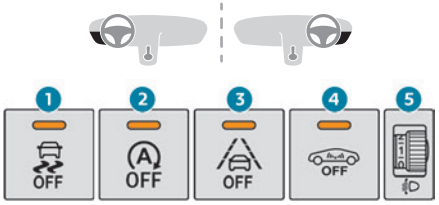


1. Bonnet release
2. Dashboard fuses
3. Courtesy lamp
   Warning lamps display for seat belts and front passenger airbag
   Interior ambience lighting
   Interior rear view mirror
   Emergency and assistance call buttons
4. Touch screen with PEUGEOT Connect Radio or PEUGEOT Connect Nav
5. Air conditioning controls
6. Stop & Start button
   Gearbox controls
   Driver Sport Pack
7. Manual parking brake
   Electric parking brake
8. USB socket
9. Horn
10. Digital instrument panel

Steering-mounted controls

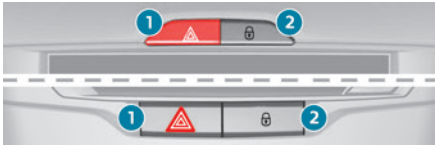
1. Exterior lighting control stalks/Direction indicators
2. Wipers/Screenwash/Trip computer control stalk
3. Audio volume controls/Choice of instrument panel display mode
4. Controls for Cruise control/Speed limiter/ Adaptive Cruise Control

Side control bar



1. Deactivation/Reactivation of DSC and ASR (GTi version)
2. Deactivation/Reactivation of Stop & Start
3. Deactivation/Reactivation of Active Lane Departure Warning System
4. Deactivation of the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring alarm
5. Headlamp beam height adjustment wheel

Central control bar



1. Hazard warning lamps switch
2. Locking/unlocking from inside control

Eco-driving

Eco-driving refers to a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their energy consumption (fuel and/or electricity) and CO_2 emissions.

Optimise your use of the gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up promptly. While accelerating, change up early.
With an automatic gearbox, favour automatic mode and avoid pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.
The gear shift indicator prompts you to engage the most suitable gear: whenever this indication is displayed on the instrument panel, follow it straight away.
With an automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal and press the accelerator gradually. These practices help to save on energy consumption, reduce CO_2 emissions and decrease general traffic noise.
If the vehicle has the steering-mounted "CRUISE" control, use cruise control at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when traffic is flowing smoothly.

Control the use of electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.
At speeds above 31 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.
Consider using equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof blind and window blinds, etc.).
Unless automatically regulated, switch off the air conditioning as soon as the desired temperature has been reached.
Switch off the demisting and defrosting functions, if they are not managed automatically.
Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.
Switch off the headlamps and foglamps when the visibility conditions do not require their use.
Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter (other than in severe wintry conditions: temperature below -23°C); your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.
As a passenger, avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game, etc.) to help reduce consumption of energy.
Disconnect all portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items in the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.
Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and minimise wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer, etc.). Preferably, use a roof box.
Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.
At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit summer tyres.
Avoid using the Dynamic Pack for too long, in order to limit your energy consumption.

Comply with the servicing instructions

Check tyre pressures regularly, with the tyres cold, referring to the label in the door aperture on the driver's side.
Carry out this check in particular:
– before a long journey.
– at each change of season.
– after a long period out of use.
Do not forget the spare wheel and, where applicable, the tyres on your trailer or caravan.
Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter, passenger compartment filter, etc.)and observe the schedule of operations in the manufacturer's service schedule.
With a BlueHDi Diesel engine, if the SCR system is faulty, your vehicle will emit pollution. Visit a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to restore your vehicle's nitrogen oxide emissions to legal levels.
When filling the fuel tank, do not continue after the third cut-out of the nozzle, to avoid overflow.
You will only see the fuel consumption of your new vehicle settle down to a consistent average after the first 1,900 miles (3,000 kilometres).

Digital instrument panel

This head-up digital instrument panel can be customised.
Depending on the display mode selected, some information is hidden or presented differently.
Example with the "**DIALS**" display mode:

1. Fuel gauge (Petrol or Diesel)
2. Remaining range (miles or km)
3. Cruise control/speed limiter settings
   Display of speed limit signs
4. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h)
5. Total distance recorder (miles or km)
6. Rev counter (x 1,000 rpm) (Petrol or Diesel)
7. Gear shift indicator (arrow and recommended gear)
   Selector position and gear on automatic gearbox (Petrol or Diesel)
   Driving mode selected (other than "**Normal**" mode)
8. Coolant temperature indicator (°C) (Petrol or Diesel)
9. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h) (Petrol or Diesel)

Displays

Some lamps have a fixed location, others can change location.
For certain functions that have indicator lamps for both operation and deactivation, there is only one dedicated location.

Permanent information

In the standard display, the instrument panel shows:
– in fixed locations:
  • Information related to the gearbox and gear shift indicator (Petrol or Diesel).
  • Fuel gauge (Petrol or Diesel).
  • Range (Petrol or Diesel).
  • Coolant temperature indicator (Petrol or Diesel).
  • Driving mode.
– in variable locations:
  • Digital speedometer.
  • Total distance recorder.
  • Status or alert messages displayed temporarily.

Optional information

Depending on the selected display mode and active features, additional information may be displayed:
– Rev counter (Petrol or Diesel).
– Trip computer.
– Driving aid functions.
– Speed limiter or cruise control.
– Media currently playing.
– Navigation instructions.
– Engine information (G-meters, Power-meters, Boost, Torque) in Sport mode.

Customising the instrument panel

Depending on version, the appearance of the instrument panel may be customisable (colour and/or display mode).

Display language and units
These depend on the touch screen settings.
When travelling abroad, the speed must be shown in the official units of the country you are driving in (mph, miles or km/h, km).

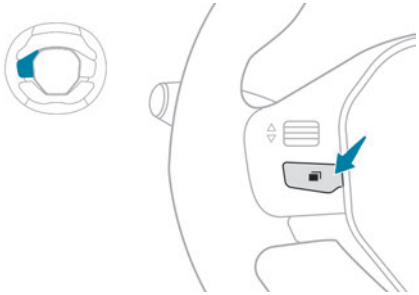
As a safety measure, these adjustments must be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

Choosing the display colour

Depending on version, the instrument panel display colour depends on the colour scheme chosen in this system.
This function is set via the **Settings** touch screen menu.

Choosing the display mode

In each mode, specific types of information are displayed on the instrument panel.



► Press this button to display and scroll through the various display modes on the instrument panel.
The selected display mode is automatically applied after a few moments.

Display modes

– "**DIALS**": standard display of analogue and digital speedometers, total distance recorder and:
- fuel gauge, coolant temperature indicator and rev counter (Petrol or Diesel).

– **NAVIGATION**": specific display, showing current navigation information (map and instructions).
– "**DRIVING**": specific display, showing information relating to active driving aid systems.
– "**MINIMAL**": display with digital speedometer, distance recorders, fuel gauge and coolant temperature indicator.
– "**PERSONAL 1**"/"**PERSONAL 2**": displays the information selected by the driver in the centre of the instrument panel.

Configuring a "PERSONAL" display mode

With PEUGEOT Connect Radio

► Press **Settings** in the banner of the touch screen.
► Select "**Configuration**".
► Select "**Instrument panel personalisation**".

With PEUGEOT Connect Nav

► Press **Settings** in the banner of the touch screen.
► Select "**OPTIONS**".
► Select "**Instrument panel personalisation**".
► Select "**PERSONAL 1**" or "**PERSONAL 2**".
► Select the type of information using the scroll arrows on the touch screen:
- "**Default**" (empty).
- "**Trip computer**".
- "**Media**".
- "**G-metres**" (depending on version).
- "**Power meters + Boost + Torque**" (depending on version).

► Confirm to save and exit.
The information is displayed immediately on the instrument panel if the corresponding display mode is selected.

> The type of information selected in "**PERSONAL 1**" mode is not available in "**PERSONAL 2**" mode.

Warning and indicator lamps

Displayed as symbols, the warning and indicator lamps inform the driver of the occurrence of a malfunction (warning lamps) or of the operating status of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lamps). Certain lamps light up in two ways (fixed or flashing) and/or in several colours.

Associated warnings

The illumination of a lamp may be accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message displayed in a screen.
Relating the type of alert to the operating status of the vehicle allows you to determine whether the situation is normal or whether a fault has occurred: refer to the description of each lamp for further information.

When the ignition is switched on

Certain red or orange warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. These warning lamps should go off as soon as the engine is started.
For more information on a system or a function, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning lamp continuously lit

The illumination of a red or orange warning lamp indicates the occurrence of a fault that needs further investigation.

If a warning lamp remains lit

The references **(1)**, **(2)** and **(3)** in the warning and indicator lamp description indicate whether you should contact a qualified professional in addition to the immediate recommended actions.
(1): **You must stop the vehicle**.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
(2): Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
(3): Visit a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

List of warning and indicator lamps

Red warning/indicator lamps

STOP

Fixed, associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
A serious fault with the engine, braking system, power steering, automatic gearbox or a major electrical fault has been detected.
Carry out (1) and then (2).

Engine oil pressure

Fixed.
There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.
Carry out (1) and then (2).

Braking

Fixed.
The brake fluid level in the braking circuit has dropped significantly.
Carry out (1), then top up with fluid that complies with the manufacturer's recommendations. If the problem persists, carry out (2).

Fixed.
The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system is faulty.
Carry out (1) and then (2).

Parking brake

Fixed.
The parking brake is applied or not properly released.

Electric parking brake

Flashing.
The electric parking brake is not applied automatically.
The application/release is faulty.
Carry out (1) on level ground (horizontally).
– with a manual gearbox, with a gear engaged.
– with an automatic gearbox, with the lever in position **P**.
Then carry out (2).

12V battery charge (depending on country of sale)

Fixed.
The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, etc.).
Carry out (1).

If the electric parking brake stops working, immobilise the vehicle:
► With the manual gearbox, engage a gear.
► With the EAT6 automatic gearbox, move the gear selector to position **P**.
► With the EAT8 automatic gearbox, fit the chock against one of the wheels.
Clean and tighten the terminals. If the warning lamp does not go off when the engine is started, carry out (2).

Door(s) open

Fixed, associated with a message identifying the door.
If one of the doors or the boot is not fully closed (speed below 6 mph [10 km/h]).

Fixed, associated with a message identifying the door, together with an audible signal.
If one of the doors or the boot is not fully closed (speed above 6 mph [10 km/h]).

Seat belts not fastened/unfastened

Fixed or flashing, accompanied by an audible signal.
A seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened.

Low fuel level

Fixed, with the reserve level shown in red, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message.
When it first comes on, you have **approximately 6 litres of fuel** remaining in the tank (reserve).

Until the fuel level is topped up, this alert will be repeated every time the ignition is switched on, with increasing frequency as the fuel level decreases and approaches zero.
Refuel without delay to avoid running out of fuel.
Never drive until completely empty, as this could damage the emissions control and injection systems.

Orange warning/indicator lamps

Engine self-diagnosis system

Flashing.
The engine management system has a fault.
There is a risk that the catalytic converter will be destroyed.
Carry out (2) **without fail**.

Fixed.
The emission control system has a fault.
The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started.
Carry out (3) quickly.

Service

Temporarily on.
One or more minor faults, for which there is/are no specific warning lamp(s), have been detected.
Identify the cause of the problem with the help of the message displayed on the instrument panel.
You can deal with some problems yourself, for example an open door or when the particle filter is becoming saturated.
For other problems, such as a fault with the tyre under-inflation detection system, carry out (3).

Fixed.
One or more major faults, for which there is/are no specific warning lamp(s), have been detected.
Identify the cause of the problem with the help of the message displayed on the instrument panel, then carry out (3).

Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".
Automatic release of the electric parking brake is unavailable.
Carry out (2).

Service warning lamp fixed and service spanner flashing then fixed.
The servicing interval has been exceeded.
The vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible.
Only with BlueHDi Diesel engines.

Malfunction (with electric parking brake)

Fixed.
The electric parking brake has a fault.
Carry out (3) quickly.

Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".
The vehicle cannot be immobilised with the engine running.
If manual application and release commands are not working, the electric parking brake control lever is faulty.
The automatic functions must be used at all times and are automatically re-enabled in the event of a control lever fault.
Carry out (2).

Flashing, when the vehicle is started.
The parking brake has not been properly released.
Carry out (1) and try to fully release the parking brake using the control lever, with your foot on the brake pedal.
If the problem persists, carry out (2).

Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".
The parking brake no longer delivers optimum performance for parking the vehicle safely in all circumstances.
Make the vehicle safe:
► Park on a level surface.
► With a manual gearbox, engage a gear.
► With an automatic gearbox, with **P** selected, place the supplied chocks against one of the wheels.
Then carry out (2).

Under-inflation

Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.
The pressure in one or more wheels is too low.
Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible.
Reinitialise the detection system after adjusting the pressure.

Under-inflation warning lamp flashing then fixed and Service warning lamp fixed.
The tyre pressure monitoring system is faulty.
Under-inflation detection is no longer monitored.
Check the tyre pressures as soon as possible and carry out (3).

AdBlue® (BlueHDi)

On for around 30 seconds when starting the vehicle, accompanied by a message indicating the driving range.
The driving range is between 1,500 and 500 miles (2,400 and 800 km).
Top up the AdBlue®.

Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range.
The driving range is between 500 and 62 miles (800 and 100 km).
Promptly top up the AdBlue®, or carry out (3).

Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range.
The driving range is less than 62 miles (100 km).
You **must** top up the AdBlue® to **avoid engine starting being prevented**, or carry out (3).

Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.
The AdBlue® tank is empty: the legally required engine immobiliser system prevents the engine from starting.
To restart the engine, top up the AdBlue® or carry out (2).
It is **essential** to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to the tank.

SCR emissions control system (BlueHDi)

Fixed when the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.
A malfunction of the SCR emissions control system has been detected.
This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.

Flashing AdBlue® warning lamp on switching on the ignition, with the Engine self-diagnostics warning lamp on fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range.
Depending on the message displayed, it is possible to drive for up to 685 miles (1,100 km) before the engine immobiliser is triggered.
Carry out (3) without delay, to **avoid starting being prevented**.

Flashing AdBlue® warning lamp on switching on the ignition, with the Engine self-diagnostics warning lamp on fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.
The engine immobiliser prevents the engine from restarting (the permitted driving limit has been exceeded after confirmation of a malfunction of the emissions control system).
To start the engine, carry out (2).

Distance Alert/Active Safety Brake

Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.
The system has been deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

Flashing.
The system activates and brakes the vehicle momentarily to reduce the speed of collision with the vehicle in front.

Fixed, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.
The system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

Fixed.
The sensors in the driver's seat (and/or front passenger seat, depending on version) have detected a weight but the corresponding seat belt has not been fastened.

Diesel engine preheating

Temporarily on.
When switching on the ignition, if the weather conditions and the engine temperature make it necessary.
Wait until the warning lamp goes off before starting.
With Keyless Entry and Starting, when the warning lamp goes off, starting is immediate if you press and hold:
– the clutch pedal with a manual gearbox.
– the brake pedal with an automatic gearbox.
If the engine does not start, switch the ignition off and then on, wait until the lamp goes off again, then start the engine.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

Fixed.
The anti-lock braking system has a fault.
The vehicle retains conventional braking.
Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).

Dynamic stability control (DSC) and Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

Fixed.
With GTi version:
The DSC/ASR systems have been deactivated by pressing the deactivation button.
Except GTi version:
The ASR system has been deactivated via the **Driving functions** menu.
This/these system(s) is/are reactivated automatically above 31 mph (50 km/h), except for the GTi version, as well as when the ignition is switched off.
To reactivate them below 31 mph (50 km/h), depending on version, press the button again or go to the **Driving functions** menu.

Dynamic stability control (DSC)/Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

Flashing.
DSC/ASR regulation is activated in the event of a loss of grip or trajectory.

Fixed.
The DSC/ASR system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

Emergency brake malfunction (with electric parking brake)

Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".
Emergency braking does not deliver optimal performance.
If automatic release is not available, use manual release or carry out (3).

Airbags

Fixed.
One of the airbags or seat belt pretensioners is faulty.
Carry out (3).

Front passenger airbag (ON)

Fixed.
The front passenger airbag is activated.
The control is in the "**ON**" position.
In this case, do NOT install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat - Risk of serious injury!

Front passenger airbag(OFF)

Fixed.
The front passenger airbag is deactivated.
The control is in the "**OFF**" position.
You can install a "rearward facing" child seat, unless there is a fault with the airbags (airbag warning lamp on).

Deactivation of automatic functions (with electric parking brake)

Fixed.
The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" functions are deactivated or faulty.
In the event of a fault, illumination of this warning lamp is accompanied by an alert message.
Carry out (3) if automatic application/release is no longer possible.
The parking brake can be released manually.

Automatic application (with electric parking brake)

Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".
Automatic application is not available, the parking brake can only be used manually.
Use the electric parking brake control lever.
If automatic release is also not available, use manual release.

Malfunction (with electric parking brake)

Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".
The parking brake is faulty: manual and automatic functions may not be working.
When stationary, to immobilise the vehicle:
► Pull and hold the control lever for approximately 7 to 15 seconds, until the indicator lamp comes on on the instrument panel.
If this procedure does not work, secure the vehicle:

► Park on a level surface.
► With a manual gearbox, engage a gear.
► With an automatic gearbox, select **P**, then place the supplied chock against one of the wheels.
Then carry out (2).

Active Lane Departure Warning System

Fixed.
The system is deactivated or on standby.

Flashing indicator.
You are about to cross a broken lane marking without operating the direction indicators.
The system is activated, then corrects the trajectory on the side of the lane marking detected.

Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
The system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

Rear foglamps

Fixed.
The lamps are on.

Green warning/indicator lamps

Automatic wiping

Fixed.
Automatic front wiping is activated.

Stop & Start

Fixed.
When the vehicle stops the Stop & Start puts the engine into STOP mode.

Flashing temporarily.
STOP mode is momentarily unavailable or START mode is automatically triggered.

Direction indicators

Direction indicators with audible signal.
The direction indicators are on.

Sidelamps

Fixed.
The lamps are on.

Dipped beam headlamps

Fixed.
The lamps are on.

Front foglamps

Fixed.
The front foglamps are lit.

Automatic headlamp dipping

Fixed.
The function has been activated via the touch screen (**Driving** / **Vehicle** menu).
The lighting control stalk is in the "AUTO" position.

Blue warning/indicator lamps

Main beam headlamps

Fixed.
The lamps are on.

Black/white warning lamps

Foot on the brake

Fixed.
Insufficient or no pressure on the brake pedal.
With an automatic gearbox, with the engine running, before releasing the parking brake, to move out of position **P**.
With the EAT8 automatic gearbox, it may be necessary to press the brake pedal to unlock the gearbox from mode **N**.
If you wish to release the parking brake without pressing the brake pedal, this warning lamp will remain on.

Foot on the clutch

Fixed.
Stop & Start: the change to START mode is rejected because the clutch pedal is not fully depressed.
Fully depress the clutch pedal.

Automatic gearbox EAT8

Fixed.
The EAT8 automatic gearbox is locked.
The **Unlock** button must be pressed to unlock the gearbox.

Indicators

Service indicator

The servicing information is expressed in terms of distance (kilometres or miles) and time (months or days).
The alert is given at whichever of these two terms is reached first.
The servicing information is displayed in the instrument panel. Depending on the version of the vehicle:
– The distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due, or the distance travelled since it was due preceded by the "-" sign.
– An alert message indicates the distance remaining, as well as the period before the next service is due or how long it is overdue.

> The value indicated is calculated according to the distance covered and the time elapsed since the last service.
> The alert may also be triggered close to a due date.

Service spanner

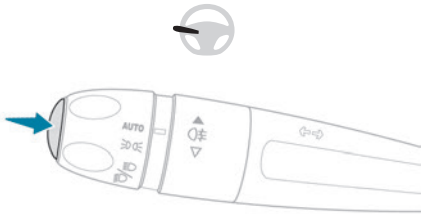
On temporarily when the ignition is switched on.
Between 620 and 1,860 miles (1,000 and 3,000 km) remain before the next service is due.
Fixed, when the ignition is switched on.
The next service is due in less than 620 miles (1,000 km).
Have your vehicle serviced very soon.

Service spanner flashing

Flashing then fixed, when the ignition is switched on.
(With BlueHDi Diesel engines, combined with the Service warning lamp.)
The servicing interval has been exceeded.
Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

Resetting the service indicator

The service indicator must be reset after each service.
If you have serviced your vehicle yourself:
► Switch the ignition off.



► Press and hold the button located on the end of the **lighting control stalk**.
► Without pressing the brake pedal, press the **START/STOP** button once; a temporary display window appears and a countdown begins.
► Switch on the ignition without starting the engine; a temporary display window appears and a countdown begins.
► When the display indicates =0, release the lighting control stalk button; the spanner symbol disappears.

> If you disconnect the battery following this operation, lock the vehicle and wait at least 5 minutes for the reset to be registered.

Retrieving the service information

The service information can be accessed via the "**Check/Diagnostics**" button in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

Engine oil level indicator

(Depending on version.)
On versions fitted with an electric gauge, the engine oil level status is displayed on the instrument panel for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, after the servicing information.

> The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

Oil level correct

This is indicated by the display of "**OIL**" or by the message "**Oil level correct**" (depending on the instrument panel).

Low oil level

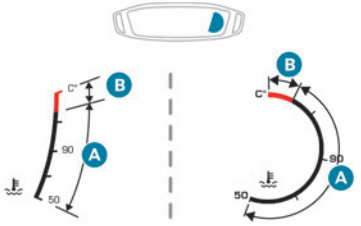
This is indicated by the message "**Oil level incorrect**" on the instrument panel, accompanied by the lighting of the Service warning lamp and an audible signal.
If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Gauge fault

This is indicated by the display of "**OIL_ _**" or by the message "**Oil level measurement invalid**" (depending on the instrument panel), accompanied by the lighting of the Service warning lamp and an audible signal.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! In the event of a fault with the electric gauge, the oil level is no longer monitored.
If the system is faulty, you must check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick located under the bonnet.
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Coolant temperature indicator



With the engine running:
– In zone **A**, the temperature is correct.
– In zone **B**, the temperature is too high.
The associated warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp light up in red on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
You must stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.

! After switching off the ignition, carefully open the bonnet and check the coolant level.

i For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

AdBlue® range indicators (BlueHDi)

The Diesel BlueHDi engines are equipped with a system that associates the SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) emissions control system and the Diesel particle filter (DPF) for the treatment of exhaust gases. They cannot function without AdBlue® fluid.
When the level of AdBlue® falls below the reserve level (between 1,500 and 0 miles (2,400 and 0 km)), a warning lamp lights up when the ignition is switched on and an estimate of the distance that can be travelled before engine starting is prevented is displayed in the instrument panel.

! The engine starting prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty. It is then no longer possible to start the engine until the minimum level of AdBlue® has been topped up.

Manual display of driving range

While the driving range is greater than 1,500 miles (2,400 km), it is not displayed automatically.
You can view the range information by pressing the "**Diagnostic**" button in the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

Actions required related to a lack of AdBlue®

The following warning lamps light up when the quantity of AdBlue® is lower than the reserve level corresponding to a range of 1,500 miles (2,400 km).
Together with the warning lamps, messages regularly remind you of the need to top up to avoid engine starting being prevented. Refer to the **Warning and indicator lamps** section for details of the messages displayed.

For more information on **AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)**, and in particular on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning/ indicator lamps lit	Action	Remaining range
AdBlue	Top up.	Between 1,500 miles and 500 miles (2,400 km and 800 km)
AdBlue	Top up as soon as possible.	Between 500 miles and 62 miles (800 km and 100 km)
AdBlue	**A top-up is vital**, there is the risk that the engine will be prevented from starting.	Between 62 miles and 0 miles (100 km and 0 km)
AdBlue	To be able to restart the engine, add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to the tank.	0 miles (km)

Malfunction of the SCR emissions control system

Malfunction detection

AdBlue	If a malfunction is detected, these warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and an "Emissions fault" or "NO START IN" message.

The alert is triggered while driving, when the fault is detected for the first time, and thereafter when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, while the cause of the fault persists.

If the fault is temporary, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnostic checks of the SCR emissions control system.

Malfunction confirmed during the permitted driving phase (between 685 miles and 0 miles (1,100 km and 0 km))

If the fault indication is still displayed permanently after 31 miles (50 km) of driving, the fault in the SCR system is confirmed.
The AdBlue warning lamp flashes, and an "Emissions fault: Starting prevented in X miles" or "NO START IN X miles" message is displayed, indicating the driving range in miles or kilometres.
While driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds. The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.
You can continue driving for up to 685 miles (1,100 km) before the **engine starting prevention** system is triggered.

Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Starting prevented

Whenever the ignition is switched on, the "Emissions fault: Starting prevented" or "NO START IN" message is displayed.

! To be able to restart the engine, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Manual test

This function allows you to check certain indicators and display the alerts log.

It can be accessed via the "**Diagnostic**" button in the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

The following information is displayed on the instrument panel:

– Engine oil level.
– Next service due.
– Tyre pressures.
– Driving range associated with the AdBlue and the SCR system (BlueHDi Diesel).
– Current alerts.

i This information is also displayed automatically every time the ignition is switched on.

Total distance recorder

The total distance recorder measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its initial registration.

With the ignition on, the total distance is displayed at all times. It remains displayed for 30 seconds after switching off the ignition. It is displayed when the driver's door is opened, and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

i When travelling abroad, you may have to change the distance units (km or miles): the road speed must be displayed in the local country's official unit (km/h or mph).
The unit is changed via the screen configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary.

Lighting dimmer

This system allows the brightness of the central screen (and the instrument panel, by night) to be adjusted manually.

With PEUGEOT Connect Radio

► Press this button to select the **Settings** menu.
► Select "**Brightness**".
► Adjust the brightness by pressing the arrows or moving the slider.

The settings are applied immediately.
► Press outside the settings window to exit.

You can also switch off the screen:

► Press this button to select the **Settings** menu.
► Select "**Dark**".

The screen goes off completely.
► Press the screen again (anywhere on its surface) to turn it on.

WithPEUGEOT Connect Nav

► Press this button to select the **Settings** menu.
► Select "**OPTIONS**".
► Select "**Screen configuration**".
► Select the "**Brightness**" tab.
► Adjust the brightness by pressing the arrows or moving the slider.
► Press this button to save and exit.

You can also switch off the screen:

► Press this button to select the **Settings** menu.
► Select "**Turn off screen**".

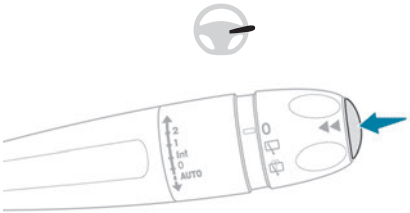
The screen goes off completely.
► Press the screen again (anywhere on its surface) to activate it.

Trip computer

Information displayed about the current journey (range, fuel consumption, average speed, etc.).

Data displayed on the instrument panel

Trip computer data is permanently displayed when the "**PERSONAL**" display mode is selected.
In all other display modes, pressing the end of the wiper control stalk will cause this data to appear temporarily in a specific window.
Display of the various tabs



► Pressing the button located on the end of the **wiper control stalk** displays the following tabs in turn:
– Current information:
  • Driving range (Petrol or Diesel).
  • Current fuel consumption.
  • Stop & Start time counter (Petrol or Diesel).
– Trips "**1**" then "**2**":
  • Average speed.
  • Average fuel consumption.
  • Distance travelled.

Trip reset

► When the desired trip is displayed, press the button on the end of the wiper control stalk for more than 2 seconds.
Trips "**1**" and "**2**" are independent and are used identically.

Definitions

Range

(miles or km)
Distance that can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (based on the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled).
This value may vary following a change in driving style or relief, resulting in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.
When the range falls below 19 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed.
After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed if it exceeds 62 miles (100 km).
If dashes instead of figures continue to be displayed while driving, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Current consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)
Calculated during the last few seconds.
This function is only displayed at speeds above 19 mph (30 km/h).

Average consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)
Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Average speed

(mph or km/h)
Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Distance travelled

(miles or km)
Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Stop & Start time counter

(minutes/seconds or hours/minutes)
If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, a time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.
It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

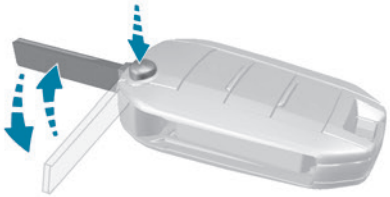
Electronic key with remote control function and built-in key,

Remote control function

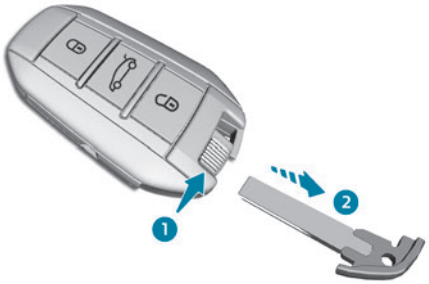
The remote control can be used for the following remote functions, depending on version:
– unlocking/locking/deadlocking the vehicle,
– remote switching on of lighting,
– activating/deactivating the alarm,
– locating the vehicle,
– immobilising the vehicle.
The remote control includes a conventional key that allows the central locking/unlocking of the vehicle using the door lock and the starting and switching off of the engine.
Back-up procedures allow the vehicle to be locked or unlocked in the event of a failure of the remote control, central locking, battery, etc. For more information on the **Back-up procedures**, refer to the corresponding section.

Built-in key

The key built into the remote control can be used for the following operations, depending on version:
– unlocking/locking/deadlocking the vehicle.
– activation/deactivation of the mechanical child lock.
– activation/deactivation of the front passenger airbag.
– back-up door locking.
– switching on the ignition and starting/switching off the engine.
Without Keyless Entry and Starting



► To unfold or fold the key, press the button.
With Keyless Entry and Starting



► To eject the key or put it back in place, pull and hold the button.

> i Unlocking/locking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.
> At the same time, depending on your version, the door mirrors unfold/fold.
> If fitted to your vehicle, the alarm is deactivated when the vehicle is unlocked.

Unlocking the vehicle

With the remote control

► Press one of these buttons to unlock **the vehicle**.

With the key

► Turn the key in the driver's door lock **towards the front of the vehicle** to unlock.
If your vehicle has an alarm, it will not be deactivated. Opening a door will trigger the

alarm, but this will stop when the ignition is switched on.

Selective unlocking of the vehicle

Complete unlocking is activated by default. This setting is done in the **Vehicle / Driving** menu, then **Driving functions** and **Vehicle access**.

Use this button for access to additional information.

With the remote control

► To unlock the **driver's door** only, press this button once.

– To unlock **the other doors** and the **boot**, press this button again.

Selective unlocking of the boot

Complete unlocking is activated by default. This setting is done in the **Vehicle / Driving** menu, then **Driving functions** and **Vehicle access**.

– Press this button to unlock the boot.

Use this button for access to additional information.

Locking the vehicle

With the remote control

► Press this button to lock the vehicle completely.

Maintaining the locking action (key or remote control) automatically closes the windows.

With the key

► Turn the key **towards the rear of the vehicle** to lock the vehicle completely.

If your vehicle has an alarm, this will not be activated.

Locating your vehicle

This function allows you to identify your vehicle from a distance, particularly in poor light. Your vehicle must be locked.

► Press this button.

This will switch on the courtesy lamps and the direction indicators will flash for around ten seconds.

Remote operation of lighting

A short press on this button switches on the lighting remotely (sidelamps, dipped beam headlamps and number plate lamps).

A second press before this time comes to an end cancels lighting from a distance.

Deadlocking

! Deadlocking renders the exterior and interior door controls inoperative.

It also deactivates the manual central control button.

For this reason, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

With the remote control

► Press this button to lock the vehicle completely.

– Within five seconds, press this button again to deadlock the vehicle.

i Deadlocking is confirmed by fixed illumination of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

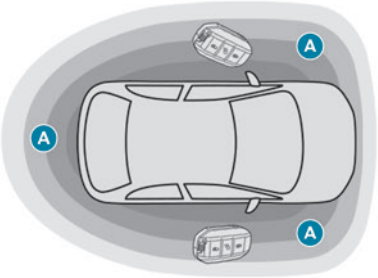
Depending on your version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.

With the key

► Turn the key in the driver's door lock towards the rear to lock the vehicle completely.

► Turn the key towards the rear again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

Keyless Entry and Starting



This system allows the unlocking, locking and starting of the vehicle, while carrying the electronic key in the recognition zone “**A**” around the vehicle.

> Unlocking/locking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.
> At the same time, depending on your version, the door mirrors unfold/fold.
> If fitted to your vehicle, the alarm is deactivated when the vehicle is unlocked.

Complete unlocking

► With the electronic key on your person and in recognition zone **A**, pass your hand behind the door handle of a front door to unlock the vehicle, then pull the handle to open the door.

Selective unlocking

When selective unlocking of the driver's door is activated:

► With the electronic key in the driver side zone, pass your hand behind the driver’s door handle to unlock only the driver’s door, then pull on the handle to open the door.

► With the electronic key in the passenger side zone, pass your hand behind the front passenger door handle to unlock the whole vehicle, then pull on the handle to open the door.

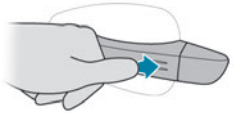
When boot unlocking only is activated:

► With the electronic key in the recognition zone **A**, press the boot unlocking control to unlock just the tailgate, then raise the tailgate.

Complete unlocking is activated by default.
This can be set via the **Vehicle/Driving** menu, then **Driving functions** and **Vehicle access**.

Use this button to access additional information.

Locking



► With the key in recognition zone **A**, press with a finger or thumb on one of the front door handles (at the markings) to lock the vehicle or press the tailgate locking control.

Maintain pressure with your finger or thumb until the windows close completely.

> Ensure that no one is preventing the closing of the windows.
> Be aware of children when operating the windows.

Deadlocking

! Deadlocking renders the exterior and interior door controls inoperative.
It also deactivates the manual central locking button.
For this reason, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

Via the doors or the tailgate:
► Electronic key on your person in recognition zone **A**, press the door handle with one finger (where marked) to lock the vehicle or on the locking control located on the tailgate (on right).
► Within five seconds, press the door handle or the locking control on the tailgate (on right) again to deadlock the vehicle.

! Accumulations (water, dust, grime, salt etc.) on the inner surface of the door handle may affect detection.
If cleaning the inner surface of the door handle using a cloth does not restore detection, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
A sudden splash of water (stream of water, high pressure jet washer, etc.) may be identified by the system as the desire to open the vehicle.

! For reasons of security and protection against theft, do not leave your electronic key in the vehicle, even when you are near it.
It is recommended that you keep it on your person.

i If one of the doors or the boot is still open or if the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Startingsystem has been left inside the vehicle, central locking will not take place.

i If the vehicle is unlocked but the doors or boot are not subsequently opened, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds. If the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will not be reactivated automatically.

i Automatic door mirror folding and unfolding can be deactivated by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle, even for a short time, without taking the Keyless Entry and Starting system's electronic key with you.
Be aware of the risk of theft of the vehicle if the key is present in one of the defined areas while the vehicle is unlocked.

Locking/unlocking from inside

Automatic central locking of the doors

The doors can be locked automatically while driving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)).
To activate or deactivate this function, press and hold the button until a message appears on the screen.

i After unlocking, if no door is opened within 30 seconds, the doors lock again automatically.

► Press the button.
This locks and unlocks the doors and the boot.

! If the vehicle is deadlocked or locked with the remote control or the door handles, the button is not operational. In this case, use the key or remote control to unlock.

When transporting large loads with the boot open, you can press this button to lock only the doors.
When locking from inside, the door mirrors do not fold.

Advice

Remote control
The remote control is a sensitive, high-frequency device; avoid handling it in your pocket, due to the risk of unintentionally unlocking the vehicle.
Avoid pressing the remote control buttons while out of range of the vehicle, due to the risk of rendering the remote control inoperative. It would then be necessary to reset it.
The remote control does not work when the key is in the ignition switch, even when the ignition is switched off.

Anti-theft protection
Do not modify the electronic vehicle immobiliser, as this might result in malfunctions.
Remember to turn the steering wheel to engage the steering lock.

Locking the vehicle
Driving with the doors locked could make it more difficult for the emergency services to enter the vehicle in an emergency.
As a safety precaution, remove the key from the ignition or take the electronic key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

Purchasing a second-hand vehicle
Have the key codes memorised by a PEUGEOT dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones able to start the vehicle.

Back-up procedures

Lost keys, remote control, electronic key

Visit a PEUGEOT dealer with the vehicle's registration certificate, your personal identification documents and if possible, the label bearing the key code.
The PEUGEOT dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key

Total unlocking/locking of the vehicle with the key

Use these procedures in the following cases:
– remote control cell battery flat,
– remote control fault,
– vehicle in an area subject to strong electromagnetic interference.
In the first case, you can also replace the remote control cell battery.
In the second case, you can also reinitialise the remote control.
Refer to the corresponding sections.
► Insert the key in the door lock barrel.
► Turn the key towards the front of the vehicle to unlock it, or towards the rear to lock it.
► Turn the key rearwards again within 5 seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

Central locking not functioning

Use these procedures in the following cases:
– central locking fault,
– battery disconnected or discharged.

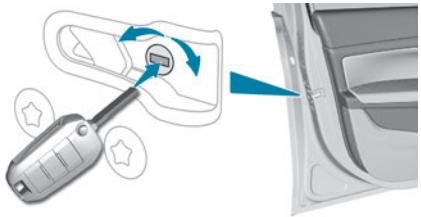
In the event of a malfunction with the central locking system, the battery must be disconnected to lock the boot and thus ensure that the vehicle is locked fully.

Front left- or right-hand door

► Insert the key in the door lock.
► Turn the key towards the front of the vehicle to unlock it, or towards the rear to lock it.

If your vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will not be activated/deactivated when the vehicle is locked/unlocked.
Opening a door will trigger the alarm, which can be stopped by switching the ignition on.

Other doors



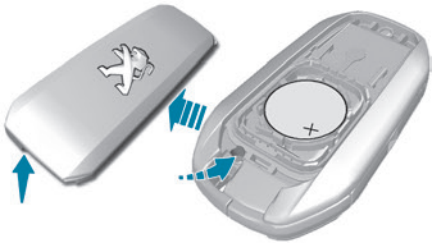
► For the other doors, check that the child lock is not activated.
► Insert the built-in key into the lock located on the edge of the door and turn it an eighth of a turn to the right for the right-hand side door, and to the left for the left-hand side door.
► Close the doors and check from the outside that the vehicle is locked.

Changing the battery

If the battery is flat, you are informed by lighting of this warning lamp in the instrument panel, an audible signal and a message in the screen.

Without Keyless Entry and Starting
Battery ref.: CR1620 / 3 volts.

With Keyless Entry and Starting
Battery ref.: CR2032 / 3 volts.



► Unclip the cover using a small screwdriver at the cut-out.
► Remove the cover.
► Remove the discharged battery from its housing.
► Fit the new battery into its housing observing the polarity.
► Clip the cover onto the casing.

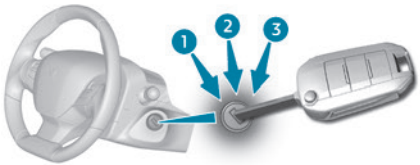
Do not throw remote control batteries away, as they contain metals that are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved disposal point.

Reinitialising the remote control

Following replacement of the battery or in the event of a fault, it may be necessary to reinitialise the remote control.

If the problem persists, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

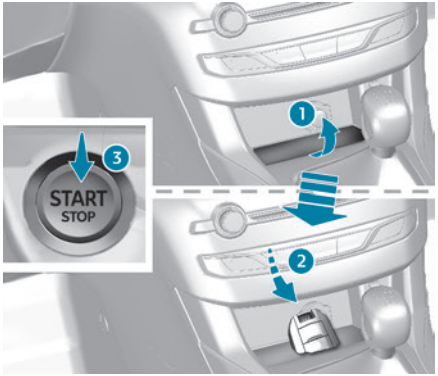
Without Keyless Entry and Starting



– Switch off the ignition.
– Turn the key to position **2 (Ignition)**.
– Immediately press the closed padlock button for a few seconds.
– Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the switch.
The remote control is now fully operational again.

With Keyless Entry and Starting

Following disconnection of the vehicle battery, replacement of the remote control battery or in the event of a remote control malfunction, you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.

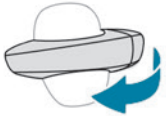


► Place the mechanical key (integral with the remote control) in the lock to unlock your vehicle.
► Remove the carpet underneath the 12 V socket.
► Place the electronic key in the house provided for this purpose.
► Switch on the ignition by pressing "START/STOP".
The electronic key is now fully operational again.
If the problem persists, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Doors

Opening

From outside



► After unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the key, pull the door handle.

From inside

► Pull the interior control lever of a front door; this unlocks the vehicle completely.

> i The interior opening control on a rear door does not work if the child lock is on.
> For more information on the **Child Lock**, refer to the corresponding section.

Closing

If a door or the boot is not closed properly with the engine running or the vehicle moving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), a message appears for a few seconds.

Boot

Opening

► With the vehicle unlocked or with the Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key in the recognition zone, press the central tailgate control.
► Lift the tailgate.
For more information on the **Remote control** or on the **Keyless Entry and Starting**, please refer to the corresponding section.

> ! If there is a fault or you have difficulty moving the tailgate when opening or closing it, have it checked as soon as possible by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to prevent the problem becoming worse, and potentially causing the tailgate to drop and thereby inflicting serious injuries.

Closing

► Lower the tailgate using one of the interior grab handles.
If the tailgate is not closed correctly (the lock has two notches): with the **engine running** or

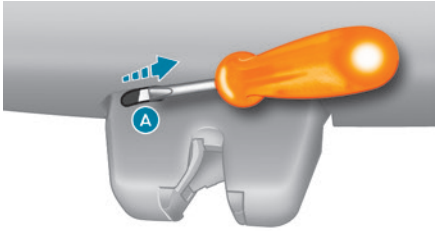
when moving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), a message appears for a few seconds.

! In the event of a fault or difficulties felt in manoeuvring the tailgate when opening or closing it, have it quickly checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to stop this issue getting worse and so as to not cause the tailgate to drop, and serious injuries.

Back-up control

System allowing the mechanical unlocking of the boot in the event of a battery or central locking system malfunction.

Unlocking



► Fold the rear seats down to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.
► Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** in the lock to unlock the boot.
► Move the latch to the right.

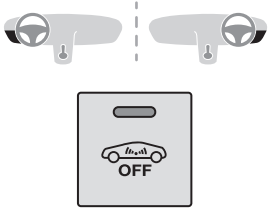
Locking again after closing

If the fault persists after closing again, the boot will remain locked.

Bicycle/accessory carrier

i Do not fit an accessory carrier to the tailgate.

Alarm



System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins.
It provides the following types of monitoring:

Exterior perimeter

The system checks for opening of the vehicle.
The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot or the bonnet.

Interior volumetric

The system checks for any variation in volume in the passenger compartment.
The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

i For vehicles that are fitted with it, interior volumetric monitoring is incompatible with programmed thermal preconditioning.

Anti-tilt

(On GTi version.)
The system checks for any change in the attitude of the vehicle.
The alarm is triggered if the vehicle is lifted, moved or knocked.

! **Self-protection function**
The system checks for any malfunction in its components.
The alarm is triggered if the battery, button or siren wiring is disconnected or damaged.

For all work on the alarm system, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm system

Activation

► Switch off the engine and exit the vehicle.

► Lock the vehicle using the remote control.

or

► Lock the vehicle with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The monitoring system is active: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second and the direction indicators come on for about 2 seconds.

After an instruction to lock the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system, the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after 5 seconds, the interior volumetric monitoring after 45 seconds.

If a door, boot, bonnet, etc. is not properly closed, the vehicle is not locked but monitoring will be activated after 45 seconds.

Deactivation

► Press this unlocking button on the remote control.

or

► Unlock the vehicle with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The monitoring system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off and the direction indicators flash for about 2 seconds.

i Where the vehicle locks itself again automatically (occurs 30 seconds after unlocking, if a door or the boot is not opened), the monitoring system is not reactivated automatically.

To reactivate it, the vehicle must be unlocked and locked again, using the remote control key or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric monitoring (and anti-tilt monitoring if fitted to your vehicle) to avoid unwanted triggering of the alarm in cases such as:

– Passengers are inside the vehicle.
– Leaving a window partially open.
– Washing your vehicle.
– Changing a wheel*.
– Having your vehicle towed*.
– Transport by ship or ferry*.

Deactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

► Switch off the ignition and within ten seconds, press this button until the indicator lamp comes on fixed.

► Get out of the vehicle.

► Lock the vehicle immediately using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The exterior perimeter monitoring alone is activated: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second.

To take effect, this deactivation must be carried out each time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivating the interior volumetric monitoring

The anti-tilt alarm is also reactivated, if your vehicle has one.

► Deactivate exterior perimeter monitoring by unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

► Reactivate the full alarm system by locking the vehicle using the remote control or the " Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The indicator lamp in the button again flashes once per second.

* Only cases valid for GTi vehicles fitted with just the anti-tilt alarm.

Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for thirty seconds.
The monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times in succession.
When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system, rapid flashing of the indicator lamp in the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence.
When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:
► Unlock the vehicle using the key (built into the remote control) in the driver's door lock.
► Open the door; this sets off the alarm.
► Switch the ignition on; the alarm stops. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

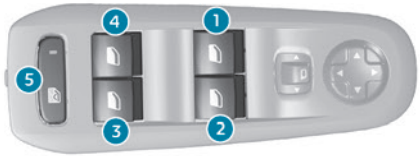
Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

► Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key (built into the remote control) in the driver's door lock.

Malfunction

When the ignition is switched on, fixed illumination of the indicator lamp in the button indicates a fault with the system.
Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electric windows



1. Left-hand front
2. Right-hand front
3. Right-hand rear
4. Left-hand rear
5. Deactivation of electric window controls located by rear seats

Maintaining the locking action (on the key or the remote control) closes the windows automatically.

Manual operation

To open or close the window, press or pull the switch gently, without exceeding the point of resistance. The window stops as soon as the switch is released.

Automatic operation

To open or close the window, press or pull the switch fully, beyond the point of resistance: the window opens or closes completely when the switch is released. Pressing the switch again stops the movement of the window.
The electric window switches remain operational for approximately one minute after the key has been removed.
Once this time has elapsed, the electric windows will not operate. To reactivate them, switch the ignition on again.

Safety anti-pinch (depending on version)

When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and immediately partially lowers again.
In the event of unwanted opening of the window when closing automatically, press the switch until the window opens completely, then pull the switch immediately until the window closes.
Continue to hold the switch for approximately one second after the window has closed.
The safety anti-pinch function is not active during this operation.

Deactivating the rear electric window controls

For the safety of your children, press this switch to deactivate the rear door electric window controls, irrespective of their position.

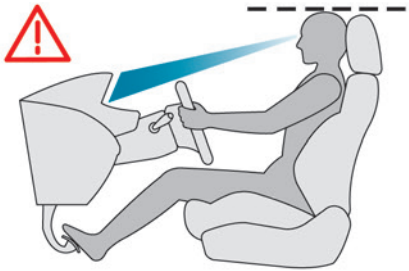
If the indicator lamp is on, the rear controls are deactivated.
If the indicator lamp is off, the rear controls are activated.

Reinitialising the electric windows

Following reconnection of the battery, the safety anti-pinch function must be reinitialised.
The anti-pinch function is disabled during the following operations:
– bring the window down completely, then bring it back up. It will go up by a few centimetres with each press. Perform the operation again until the window is fully closed,
– continue to pull the switch upwards for at least one second after reaching the window closed position.

! Always remove the key when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.
In the event of contact (pinching) during operation of the windows, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the switch concerned.
When operating the passenger electric window controls, the driver must ensure that no one is preventing the closing of the windows.
The driver must ensure that passengers use the electric windows correctly.
Be aware of children when operating the windows.

PEUGEOT i-Cockpit

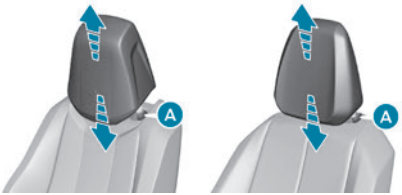


Before going out on the road and to benefit from the ergonomic layout of the PEUGEOT i-Cockpit, adjust in the following order:
– the height of the head restraint,
– the seat backrest angle,
– the seat cushion height,
– the longitudinal position of the seat,
– the depth and then the height of the steering wheel,
– the rear view mirror and door mirrors.

i Once these adjustments have been made, ensure that from your driving position you can see the "head-up" instrument panel clearly, over the reduced diameter steering wheel.

Front head restraints

Adjusting the height



Upward:
► pull the head restraint up to the desired position; the head restraint can be felt to click into position.
Downward:
► press lug **A** and push the head restraint down to the desired position.

i The head restraint is correctly adjusted when its upper edge is level with the top of the passenger's head.

Removing a head restraint

► Pull the head restraint up as far as it will go.
► Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and remove it completely.
► Stow the head restraint securely.

Refitting a head restraint

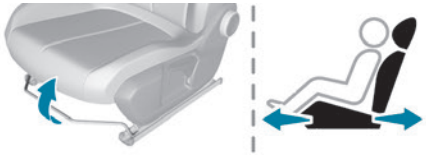
► Insert the head restraint rods into the guides in the seat backrest.
► Push the head restraint down as far as it will go.
► Press lug **A** to free the head restraint and push it down.
► Adjust the height of the head restraint.

! Never drive with the head restraints removed; they should be in place and correctly adjusted for the occupant of the seat.

Manually-adjusted front seats

! For safety reasons, seat adjustments must only be made when the vehicle is stationary.

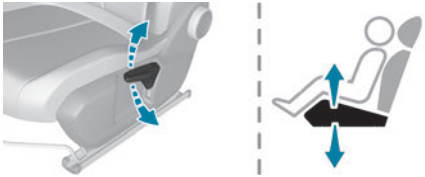
Longitudinal



► Lift the control and slide the seat forwards or backwards.

! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat.
There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

Height



► Pull the control upwards to raise or push it downwards to lower, as many times as necessary to obtain the position required.

Backrest angle

► Turn the knob to adjust the backrest.

Lumbar

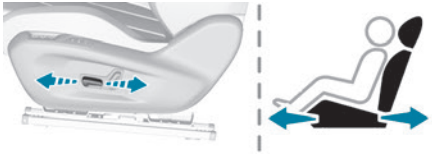
► Turn the knob manually to obtain the desired level of lumbar support.

Electrically-adjusted driver's seat

! For safety reasons, seat adjustments must only be made when the vehicle is stationary.

i To avoid draining the battery, carry out these adjustments with the engine running.

Longitudinal



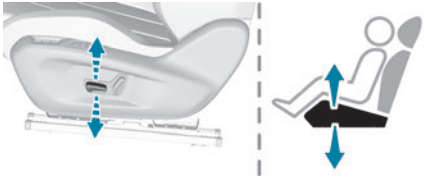
► Push the control forwards or backwards to slide the seat.

! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat.
There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

Backrest angle

► Tilt the control forwards or backwards to adjust the angle of the backrest.

Cushion height and angle



► Tilt the rear of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required height.
► Tilt the front of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required angle.

Memorising driving positions

System which registers the electrical settings of the driver's seat.
Two positions can be stored and recalled, using the buttons on the side of the driver's seat.

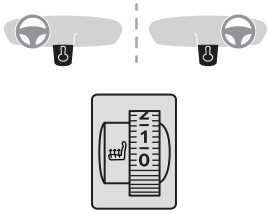
Memorising a position using buttons M/1/2

► Switch on the ignition.
► Adjust your seat.
► Press button **M**, then press button **1** or **2** within four seconds.
An audible signal indicates that the position has been stored.
Memorising a new position cancels the previous position.

Recalling a stored position

► With the ignition on or the engine running, press button **1** or **2** to return to the corresponding position.
An audible signal confirms that adjustment is complete.
You can interrupt the current movement by pressing button **M**, **1** or **2** or by using one of the seat controls.
A stored position cannot be recalled while driving.
Recalling stored positions is deactivated 45 seconds after switching off the ignition.

Heated seats



With the engine running, the front seats can be heated separately.
► Use the adjustment wheel to switch on and select the level of heating required:
0:Off.
1:Low.
2:Medium.
3:High.

Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied.
Reduce the heating intensity as soon as possible.
When the seat and passenger compartment have reached a satisfactory temperature, switch the function off; reducing electrical consumption in turn decreases energy consumption.

! Prolonged use of heated seats is not recommended for people with sensitive skin.
There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (illness, taking medication, etc.).
To keep the heated pad intact and to prevent a short circuit:
– Do not place heavy or sharp objects on the seat.
– Do not kneel or stand on the seat.
– Do not spill liquids onto the seat.
– Never use the heating function if the seat is damp.

Electric lumbar adjustment

(with electric seat)

► Press the control to obtain the desired level of lumbar support.

Massage function

(with electric seat)

Activation / Deactivation

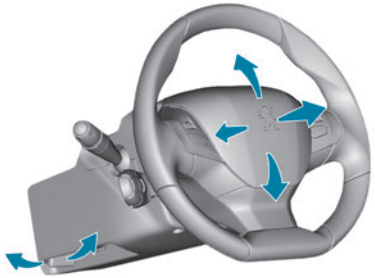
► Press this button.

Its indicator lamp comes on and the massage function is activated for a period of 1 hour. During this time, massage is performed in 6 cycles of 10 minutes (6 minutes of massage followed by 4 minutes break).
After one hour the function is deactivated, the indicator lamp goes off.
Deactivate the massage function by pressing this button, its indicator lamp goes off.
This function provides lumbar massage to the persons in front; it only operates when the engine is running as well as in the STOP mode of the Stop & Start system.

Adjustment of intensity

► Press this button to adjust the intensity of the massage.
Two levels of massage are available.

Steering wheel adjustment



► **When stationary**, lower the control lever to release the steering wheel.
► Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
► Pull the control lever to lock the steering wheel.

! As a safety precaution, these operations should only be carried out while the vehicle is stationary.

Mirrors

Door mirrors

Each fitted with an adjustable mirror providing the lateral rearward vision necessary for overtaking or parking.

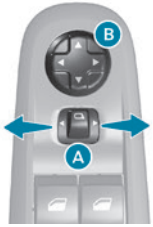
They can also be folded for parking in narrow spaces.

Demisting - Defrosting

Demisting-defrosting of the door mirrors operates with the engine running, by switching on the heated rear screen.

For more information on **Demisting and defrosting the rear screen**, refer to the associated section.

Adjustment



► Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
► Move control **B** in any of the four directions to adjust.
► Return control **A** to the central position.

As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce "blind spots". Objects that you see in the mirrors are in fact closer than they appear.

Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

Folding

► From outside: lock the vehicle using the electronic key or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.
► From inside: with the ignition on, pull the control **A** in the central position rearwards.

If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. Pull again on control **A**.

Unfolding

► From outside: unlock the vehicle using the electronic key or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.
► From inside: with the ignition on, pull the control **A** in the central position rearwards.

The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

If necessary, the mirrors can be folded manually.

Rear view mirror

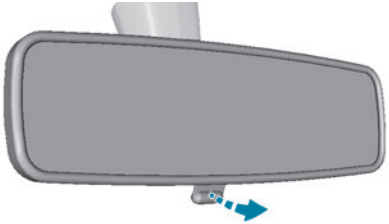
Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlights of other vehicles, etc.

Manual model

Adjustment

► Adjust the mirror so that the mirror is directed correctly in the "day" position.

Day / night position



► Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.
► Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

Automatic "electrochrome" model

This system automatically and progressively changes between day and night use by means of a sensor measuring the light coming from the rear of the vehicle.

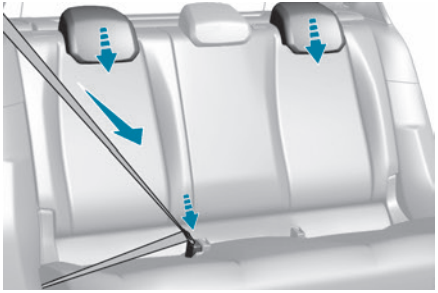
In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror

lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

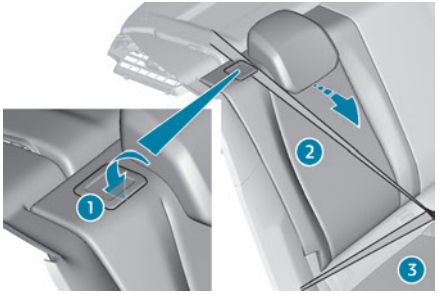
Rear seats (hatchback)

Bench seat with fixed one-piece cushion and folding backrest (1/3 - 2/3) to adapt the loading space in the boot.

Folding the backrest



► Move the corresponding front seat forwards if necessary.
► Position the corresponding outer seat belt against the backrest and fasten it.
► Place the head restraints in their lowest position.



► Press control **1** to release seat backrest **2**.
► Fold seat backrest **2** onto cushion **3**.

! When folding the seat, the centre seat belt should not be fastened but laid out flat along the backrest.

i The rear seat cushion does not fold, only the seat backrest can be folded in order to increase loading space in the boot.

Returning the backrest into position

► Bring seat backrest **2** back up and secure it.
► Check that the red indicator, located next to control **1**, is no longer visible.
► Unfasten and reposition the outer seat belt on the side of the backrest.

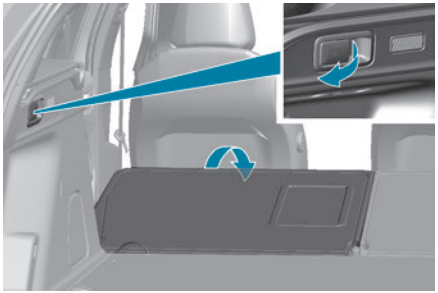
! When repositioning the seat backrest, take care not to trap the seat belts.

Rear seats (SW)

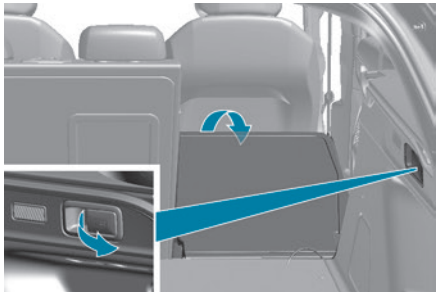
Folding bench seat (1/3 - 2/3) to adapt the loading space in the boot.

Folding down the seat from the boot

Each part of the bench seat (1/3 or 2/3) has its own control for unlocking the backrest from the boot.

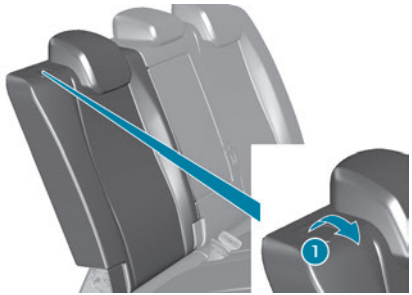


► Check that nothing might prevent the backrest from folding down (seatbelts, etc.) and that no object might impede the seat's movement (both above and below it).
► Place the head restraints in their lowest position.



► Pull the control from the boot; the backrest folds down onto the seat cushion.

Folding the seat from the rear

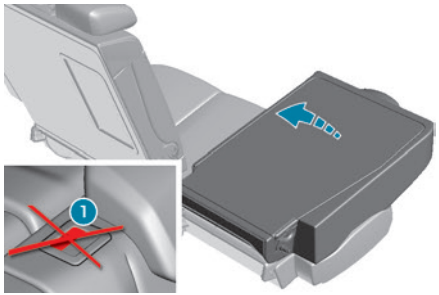


► Check that nothing might prevent the backrest from folding down and that no object might impede the seat's movement (both above and below it).

► Move the corresponding front seat forwards if necessary.
► Check the correct position of the seatbelt on the side of the seat backrest.
► Place the head restraints in their lowest position.

► Pull the control **1** towards the front, the backrest folds down onto the seat cushion.

Repositioning the seat

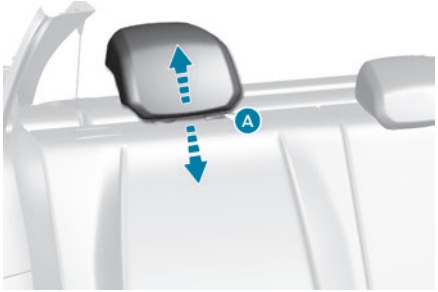


► Return the seat backrest to the upright position and lock it in place.
► Check that the red indicator, located next to control **1**, is no longer visible.
► Refit the head restraints or raise them into position.

! When returning the rear seat into position, be sure not to trap the seatbelts and ensure their buckles are correctly positioned.

Outer rear seat head restraints

These have just one position for use (up) and one position for storage (down).
They can be removed and are interchangeable.

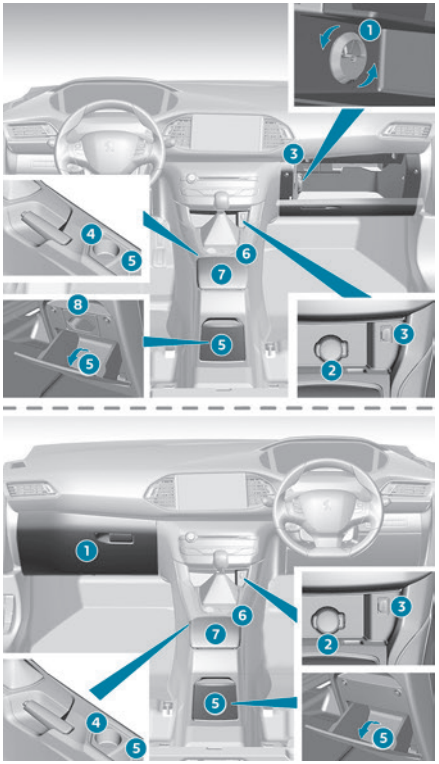


To remove a head restraint:
► pull the head restraint fully upwards,
► then, press lug **A**.

i The central head restraint cannot be adjusted.

! Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be fitted and correctly adjusted.

Interior fittings

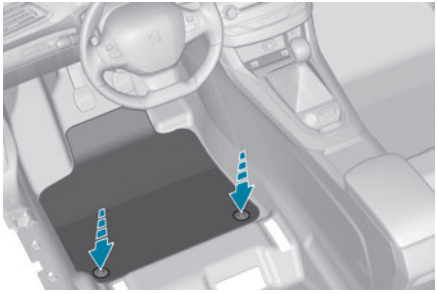


1. Glove box with air vent for cooling.

2. 12 V accessory socket (120 W)
   Observe the maximum power rating to avoid damaging the accessory.
3. USB socket
4. Cup holder (depending on version)
5. Storage (depending on version)
6. Storage - Removable cup/can holder
   Move the support to access the cup/can holder.
7. Front armrest
8. 220 V socket (120 W) or USB socket (depending on version)
   Observe the maximum power rating to avoid damaging the accessory.

Mats

Fitting



When fitting it on the driver's side, only use the mountings present on the carpet (a "click" indicates proper locking).

The other mats are simply laid over the carpet.

Removing/refitting

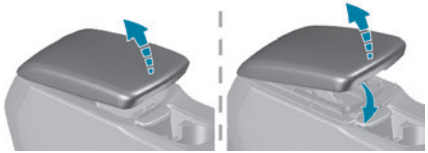
► To remove it on the driver's side, move the seat backwards and unclip the fasteners.
► To refit it, position the mat and secure it by pressing down.
► Check that the mat is secured correctly.

! To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:
– Only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used.
– Never fit one mat on top of another.
The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/ speed limiter.
The approved mats have two fasteners located underneath the seat.

Front armrest

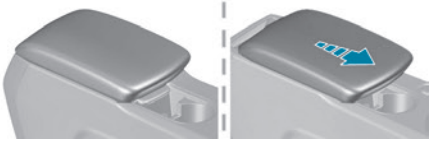
The height and longitudinal position of the armrest cover can be adjusted for greater comfort.

Height adjustment



► Raise the cover to the required position (low, intermediate or high).
► If you raise the cover slightly beyond the high position, guide it when lowering it to the low position.

Longitudinal adjustment

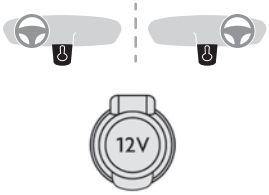


► Slide the cover fully forwards or rearwards.

Opening

► Raise the paddle.
► Raise the cover fully.

12 V accessory socket

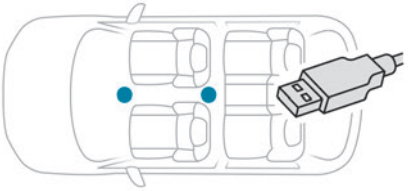


► Plug in a 12 V accessory (with a maximum rated power of 120 W) using a suitable adapter.

! Observe the maximum power rating to avoid damaging the accessory..

! The connection of an electrical device not approved by PEUGEOT, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

USB sockets



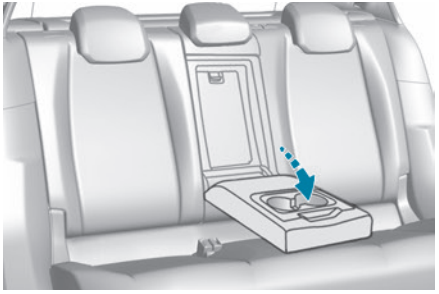
These allow the connection of a portable device, such as a iPod® type digital audio player, to recharge the device.

The USB socket located **at the front** also allows a smartphone to be connected by MirrorLink™, Android Auto® or CarPlay®, so that certain applications on the smartphone can be used on the touch screen.
You can manage these applications using the steering mounted controls or the audio system.

i When the USB port is used, the portable device charges automatically.
While charging, a message is displayed if the power consumption of the portable device exceeds the amperage supplied by the vehicle.

For more information on how to use this equipment, refer to the **Audio equipment and telematics** section.

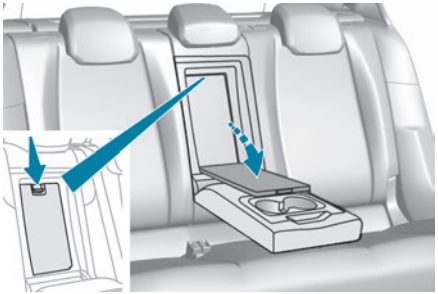
Rear armrest



► Lower the rear armrest for a more comfortable position.
It may be fitted with cup holders and also gives access to the ski flap.

Ski flap

It allows long objects to be carried in the vehicle.



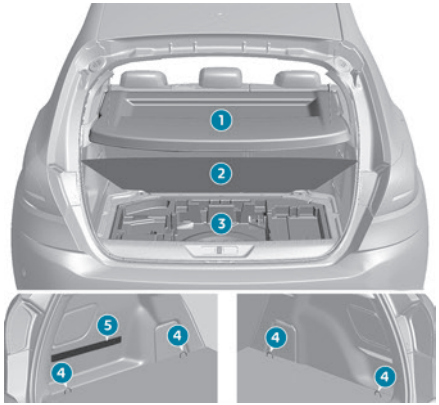
- ► Lower the armrest.
- ► Press the flap opening control.
- ► Lower the flap.
- ► Load the objects from inside the boot.

! Do not leave the flap open when not carrying long objects in the vehicle.

Load space cover/Roller

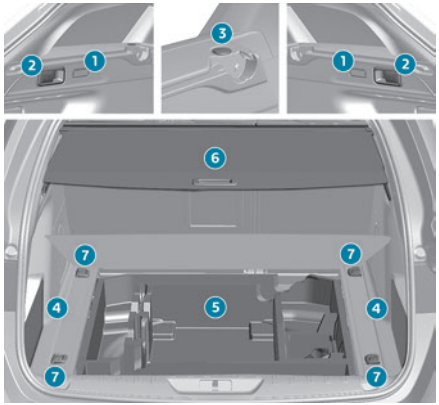
! When sharp deceleration occurs, objects placed on the load space cover can turn into projectiles.

Boot fittings (hatchback)

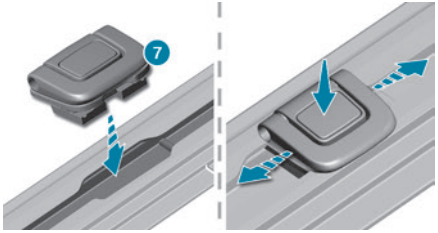


1. Rear shelf
2. Boot floor
   Lift the floor to access the storage area.
3. Storage wells, where the following are stowed:
   – towing eye
   – temporary puncture repair kit
   – spare wheel, optional or standard, depending on the trim level
4. Stowing rings
5. Strap (depending on version)

Boot fittings (SW)



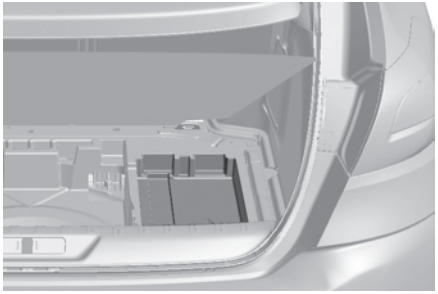
1. Boot lamp
2. Rear seat folding controls
3. 12V accessory socket (max. 120W)
4. Removable storage boxes
   Pull up to unclip them.
5. Storage wells, where the following are stowed:
   – towing eye
   – temporary puncture repair kit
6. Load space cover
   (See the corresponding section).



7.Rings for attaching a net (to restrain luggage) (depending on version)
– Pull out the rings one at a time then slide them into the oblong housing.
– While pressing the button, move the ring into the desired position.
– Observe the direction of fitting (rings in the vertical position towards the outside of the vehicle).

Warning triangle (stowing)

This safety equipment should be used in addition to the hazard warning lamps.
Its presence in the vehicle is mandatory.

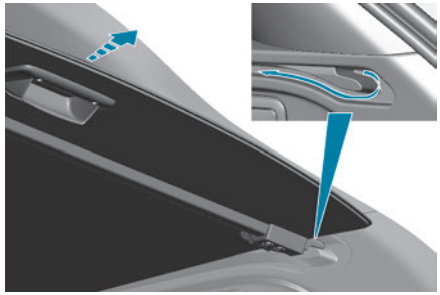


The storage location for a folded triangle or its box is under the boot floor.

Loading space cover, luggage cover (SW)

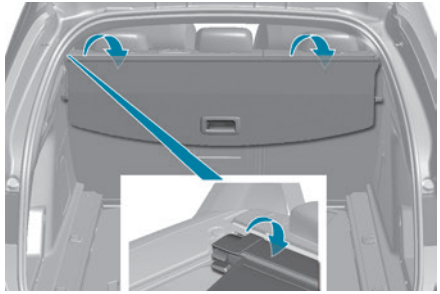
! When sharp deceleration occurs, objects placed on the luggage cover can turn into projectiles.

To reel in



► Remove the guides of the blind from the rails in the boot mounts.
► Release the blind, it rolls up automatically.

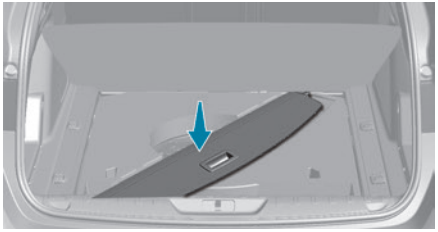
Removal



► Place your hand **underneath** the luggage cover to the left.
► Pivot the whole reel towards the front (clockwise) to disengage it.

► Proceed in the same way for the right side (anti-clockwise).

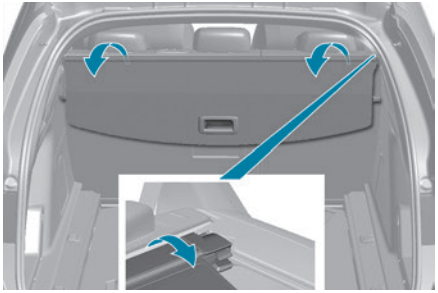
Opening



A recess in the well, underneath the boot carpet, allows you to load the luggage cover diagonally.

> This recess is not available with the bass woofer unit.

Installation



► Position the left, then the right end of the luggage cover in their respective housings.
► Put your hands **on** the reel, then pivot the whole unit towards the rear to engage it.
► Unwind the blind on the boot mount until it locks.

High load (SW)

Luggage retaining net

This allows the use of the entire loading capacity, up to the roof:
– behind the front seats (1st row) when the rear seats are folded down,
– behind the rear seats (2nd row).

1st row

► Fold down the rear seats.
► Remove the cover on each side of the roof.
► Position the net's upper hooks in the roof.
► Attach the bottom of the net to the fixings located at the seat belt mountings.
► Pull on the straps to stretch the net.
Once fitted, the net does not prevent folding of the rear seat backrests.

2nd row

► Remove the cover on each side of the roof.
► Position the net's upper hooks in the roof.
► Attach the bottom of the net to the rings located either side of the boot carpet or on the boot rails (depending on trim level).
► Pull on the straps to stretch the net.

Heating and Ventilation

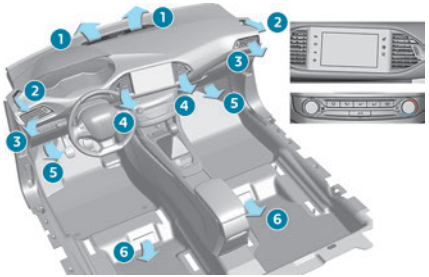
Air intake

The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the exterior, via the grille located at the base of the windscreen, or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

Controls

Depending on version, the controls are accessible in the **Climate** touch screen menu or are grouped together in the control panel on the centre console.

Air distribution



1. Windscreen demisting/defrosting vents
2. Front side window demisting/defrosting vents
3. Adjustable and closable side air vents
4. Adjustable and closable central air vents
5. Air outlets to the front footwells
6. Air outlets to the rear footwells

Advice

Using the ventilation and air conditioning system

► To ensure that air is distributed evenly, keep the external air intake grilles at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents, the air outlets and the air extractor in the boot free from obstructions.

► Do not cover the sunshine sensor located on the dashboard; this sensor is used to regulate the automatic air conditioning system.

► Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.

► If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power, enhancing the towing capacity.

Avoid driving for too long with the ventilation off or with prolonged operation of interior air recirculation. Risk of misting and deterioration of the air quality!

If the interior temperature is very high after the vehicle has stood for a long time in the sunshine, air the passenger compartment for a few moments.

Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.

Condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water underneath the vehicle. This is perfectly normal.

Servicing the ventilation and air conditioning system

► Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.

We recommend using a composite passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its special active additive, this type of filter helps to purify the air breathed by the occupants and keep the passenger compartment clean (by reducing allergic symptoms, unpleasant odours and greasy deposits).

► To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, have it checked according to the recommendations in the Maintenance and Warranty Guide.

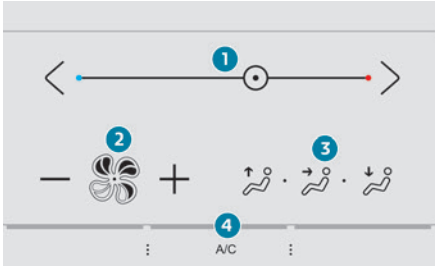
Stop & Start

The heating and air conditioning systems only operate when the engine is running. Temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.

For more information on the **Stop & Start**, refer to the corresponding section.

Manual air conditioning

The manual air conditioning system operates with the engine running.



Press the "**Air conditioning**" menu button to display the system controls page.

Temperature adjustment

► Press one of the buttons **1** to decrease or increase the value.

Air flow adjustment

► Press one of the buttons **2** to increase or decrease the speed of the air booster fan.
The symbol for air flow (a fan) fills progressively according to the air flow setting made.
By reducing the air flow to a minimum, you are stopping ventilation.

> i Avoid driving for too long with the ventilation off (risk of misting and deterioration of air quality).

Air distribution adjustment

These buttons are used to arrange the distribution of air in the passenger compartment by combining several air outlets.

Windscreen.

Central and side air vents.

Footwells.

The air distribution can be adapted by using several buttons: illumination of the indicator lamp confirms the presence of fan boosted air in the direction indicated, the indicator lamp off indicates the absence of fan boosted air in the direction indicated.
For a uniform distribution of air in the passenger compartment, the three buttons can be activated simultaneously.

Air conditioning On / Off

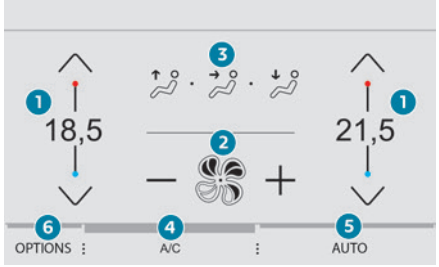
The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.
It enables you to:
– lower the temperature, in summer,
– increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.
► Press button **4** to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.
When the indicator lamp is on, the function is activated.

> i The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is inhibited.

To obtain cool air sooner, you can use recirculation of the interior air for a few moments. Then return to the intake of exterior air.
Switching off the air conditioning may result in some discomfort (humidity, condensation).

Dual-zone automatic air conditioning

The air conditioning operates with the engine running, but the ventilation and its controls can be used with only the ignition on.
The activation of the air conditioning, the temperature at the air vent outlets, and the air flow and air distribution in the passenger compartment are regulated automatically according to the temperature in the passenger compartment and the temperature setting.



Press the "**Air conditioning**" menu button to display the air conditioning system controls page.

1. Temperature.
2. Air flow.
3. Air distribution.
4. Air conditioning on/off.
5. Automatic comfort programme.
6. Access to the second page.

Temperature adjustment

The driver and front passenger can each set the temperature.

► Press one of the buttons **1** to increase or decrease the air flow.

The value displayed corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a precise temperature.

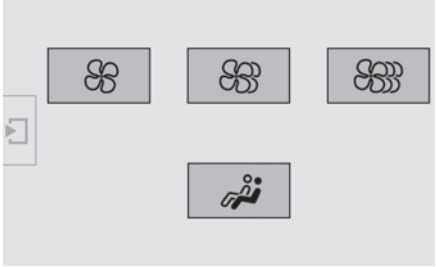
It is recommended that you avoid a difference between the left and right setting of more than 3.

Automatic comfort programme

► Press the button **5** to activate/deactivate the automatic mode of the air conditioning system.

When the indicator lamp in the button is on, the air conditioning system operates automatically: the system manages the temperature, air flow and air distribution in the passenger compartment in an optimum way depending on the comfort level you have selected.

It is possible to modulate the intensity of the automatic comfort programme by choosing one of three mode settings offered in a secondary page of the "**Air conditioning**" menu. To change the current setting, shown by the green indicator lamp, press the button for the desired mode:



"Soft": provides soft and quiet operation by limiting air flow.

"Normal": offers the best compromise between a comfortable temperature and quiet operation (default setting).

"Fast": provides strong and effective air flow.

This setting is associated with AUTO mode only. However, on deactivation of AUTO mode, the indicator for the last setting remains on. Changing the setting does not reactivate AUTO mode if deactivated.

i In cold conditions and when the engine is cold, to limit distribution of cold air in the passenger compartment, the air flow will change gradually until the comfort setting is reached.

On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort value setting, there is no need to alter the value displayed in order to reach more quickly the required level of comfort. The system automatically corrects the temperature difference.

Manual control

You can manually adjust one or more settings, while retaining automatic control of the other functions:

– air flow,
– air distribution.

As soon as you modify a setting, the indicator lamp in the "**AUTO**" button goes off.

AUTO ► Press the **AUTO** button again to activate the automatic comfort programme again.

Air flow adjustment

► Press one of the buttons **2** to increase or decrease the speed of the fan.

The air flow symbol (a fan) is filled in progressively as the speed of the fan is increased.

By reducing the air flow to minimum, you are stopping ventilation.

"**OFF**" is displayed alongside the fan.

! Avoid driving for too long with the ventilation off (risk of misting and deterioration of air quality).

Air distribution adjustment

You can modulate the distribution of air in the passenger compartment using these three buttons.

Windscreen.

Central and side air vents.

Footwells.

Each press on a button activates or deactivates the function. The indicator lamp is on when the button is activated. For a uniform distribution in the passenger compartment, all three buttons can be pressed simultaneously.
In AUTO mode, the indicator lamps in all three buttons are off.

Air conditioning On / Off

The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.
It enables you to:
– lower the temperature, in summer,
– increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.
► Press button **4** to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.

When the indicator lamp under the button is on, the air conditioning function is activated.
The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is set to off.

Ventilation function with the ignition on

When the ignition is switched on, you can use the ventilation system to adjust the **air flow** settings and the **air distribution** in the passenger compartment for a duration which depends on the battery charge.
This function does not operate the air conditioning.

"Mono" function

The comfort setting for the passenger's side can be indexed to the driver's comfort setting (mono-zone).
From the secondary page of the "**Air conditioning**" menu:

► Press this button to activate / deactivate the "Mono" function.

– The indicator lamp in the button is on when the function is activated.
The function is deactivated automatically when the passenger uses their temperature setting buttons.

Interior air recirculation

The intake of exterior air prevents the formation of mist on the windscreen and side windows. Recirculating the interior air isolates the passenger compartment from outside odours and fumes and allows the desired passenger compartment temperature to be achieved more rapidly.

► Press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by the illumination/extinction of the indicator lamp).

! Avoid prolonged use of interior air recirculation - risk of formation of mist and deterioration of air quality!

i This function is activated automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

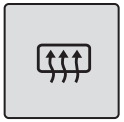
Front demisting - defrosting

These markings on the control panel indicate the positioning of the controls for rapid demisting or defrosting of the windscreen and side windows.

► Press this button to demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows more quickly.
The system automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.
► To turn it off, press this button again or press "**AUTO**".
The system restarts with the values in use before it was deactivated.

i With Stop & Start, when demisting - defrosting has been activated, STOP mode is not available.

Rear screen demisting/defrosting



On / Off

► Press this button to demist/defrost the rear screen and, depending on version, the door mirrors. The button indicator lamp comes on. Defrosting switches off automatically to prevent excessive electrical consumption.
► It is possible to stop the demisting / defrosting operation before it is switched off automatically by pressing this button again. The button indicator lamp goes off.

Switch off the demisting/defrosting of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as appropriate, as lower current consumption results in reduced fuel consumption.

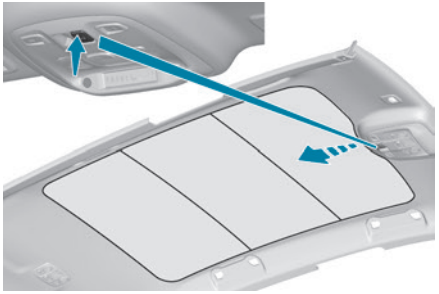
i Rear screen demisting - defrosting can only be operated when the engine is running.

Panoramic sunroof

Its electric blind improves thermal and acoustic comfort.

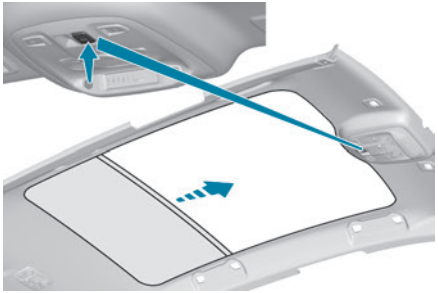
Electric blind

Opening



► Press the back of the control without going beyond the point of resistance.
The blind stops when your release the control.

Closing



► Press the front of the control without going beyond the point of resistance.
The blind stops when your release the control.

! You can also press or pull the control beyond the point of resistance: the blind opens or closes **completely** after you release the control.
Operating the control again stops the movement of the blind.

! **Anti-pinch**
If the blind encounters an obstacle, you should reverse the movement. Use the control to do this.
Remember to always switch off the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.
When operating the control, the driver should ensure that there is nothing preventing movement of the blind.

The driver must ensure that passengers use the blind correctly.
Be aware of children when operating the blind.

Courtesy lamps

1. Front courtesy lamp
2. Front map reading lamps

3. Rear courtesy lamp
4. Rear map reading lamps

Front and rear courtesy lamps

In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:
– when the vehicle is unlocked.
– when the key is removed from the ignition switch.
– when a door is opened.
– when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate the vehicle.
It switches off gradually:
– when the vehicle is locked.
– when the ignition is switched on.
– 30 seconds after the last door is closed.

Permanently off.

Permanent lighting.

Depending on version, pressing this button also switches the courtesy lamp on/off.

Front - rear map reading lamps

► With the ignition on, operate the corresponding switch.

! Take care not to put anything in contact with the courtesy lamps.

In "permanent lighting" mode, the lighting time varies according to the circumstances:
– when the ignition is off, approximately ten minutes,
– in energy saving mode, approximately thirty seconds,
– with the engine running, unlimited.

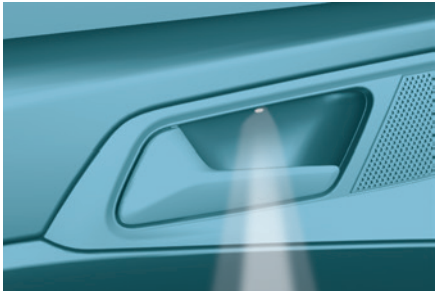
Footwell lighting

Switching on

Its operation is the same as the courtesy lamps. The lamps come on when one of the doors is opened.

Interior ambient lighting

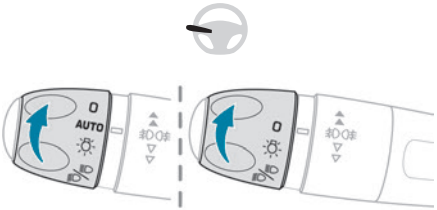
The dimmed passenger compartment lighting improves visibility in the vehicle when the light is poor.



At night, the ambient lighting comes on/goes off automatically when the sidelamps are switched on/off.

Exterior lighting control stalk

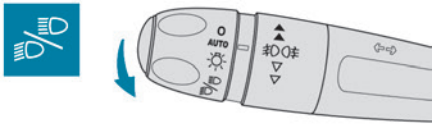
Main lighting



0	Lamps off (ignition off)/ Daytime running lamps (engine running)
AUTO	Automatic illumination of lamps/daytime running lamps
☼	Sidelamps only

Dipped or main beam headlamps

Dipping the headlamps



Pull the stalk to switch the lighting between dipped and main beam headlights.
In lighting off and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash") by pulling on the stalk.

Display

Illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument panel confirms that the lighting selected is on.

Foglamps

! In good or rainy weather, by both day and night, the front foglamps and the rear foglamps are prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They should only be used in fog or falling snow.
In these weather conditions, it is your responsibility to switch on the foglamps and dipped headlamps manually as the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light.
Switch off the front and rear foglamps when they are no longer necessary.

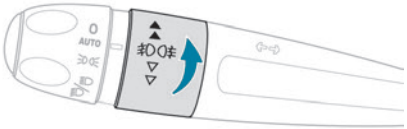
Rear foglamp

It only works if the dipped or main beam headlamps are on.

► Rotate the ring forwards/backwards to turn it on/off.
When the lighting is switched off automatically ("**AUTO**" position), the foglamp is switched off.

Front foglamps/Rear foglamps

They operate with the sidelamps, dipped or main beam headlamps on.



► Rotate the ring forwards:
- once to switch on the front foglamps,
- a second time to switch on the rear foglamps.

► Rotate the ring backwards:
- once to switch off the rear foglamps,
- a second time to switch off the front foglamps.

If the lighting is switched off automatically (with AUTO model) or the dipped beam headlamps are switched off manually, the foglamps and sidelamps remain on.
► Rotate the ring backwards to switch the foglamps off; the sidelamps will then switch off.

! Never look too closely at the luminous beam of “Full LED” headlamps: risk of serious eye injury.

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

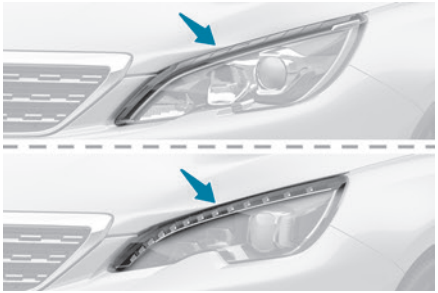
Travelling abroad
Halogen headlamps
If using your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road to the one in which your vehicle was sold, the headlamps must be adjusted to avoid dazzling oncoming drivers.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
LED lamps
The design of the front LED headlamps allows driving without modification in a country that drives on the other side of the road to the country in which your vehicle was sold.

Switching off the lights when the ignition is switched off
On switching off the ignition, all of the lights turn off immediately, except for dipped beam if automatic guide-me-home lighting is activated.

Switching on the lighting after the ignition is switched off
To reactivate the lighting control, rotate ring **A** to the **0** position - lamps off, then to the desired position.
On opening the driver's door a temporary audible signal warns the driver that the lighting is on.
They will go off automatically after a period of time that depends on the state of charge in battery (entering energy-saving mode).

Daytime running lamps/ Sidelamps

The lamps light up automatically when the engine starts.



They provide the following functions:

– Daytime running lamps (lighting control stalk at position "**0**" or "**AUTO**" with adequate light level).
– Sidelamps (lighting control stalk at position "**AUTO**" with low light levels or "Sidelamps only" or "Dipped/main beam headlamps").

Automatic illumination of headlamps

When the ring is at the “**AUTO**" position and a low level of ambient light is detected by the rain/sunshine sensor, the number plate lamps, sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver. They may also come on if rain is detected, at the same time as automatic operation of the windscreen wipers.
As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction of the rain/ sunshine sensor, the vehicle’s lighting comes on and this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and/or the display of a message. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Do not cover the rain/sunshine sensor located at the top centre of the

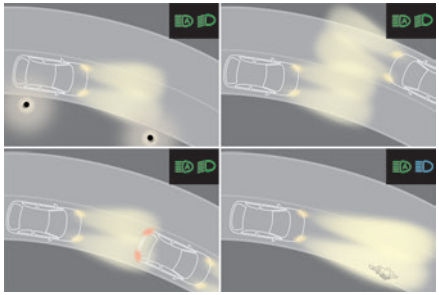
windscreen behind the interior rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

In fog or snow, the rain/sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. For this reason, the lighting will not come on automatically.

The inner surface of the windscreen may become misted up and affect the proper operation of the rain/sunshine sensor.
In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.

Automatic headlamp dipping

When the ring is in the "**AUTO**" position and the function is activated on the touch screen, this system automatically switches between dipped and main beam headlamps depending on light and traffic conditions, using a camera located at the top of the windscreen.



This system is a driving aid.
The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting, its correct use in the prevailing light, visibility and traffic conditions, and for compliance with driving and vehicle regulations.

The system becomes operational when the vehicle exceeds 16 mph (25 km/h).
When the speed falls below 9 mph (15 km/h), the function is no longer operational.

Activation/Deactivation

It is set via the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu.
The state of the system stays in the memory when switching off the ignition.

Operation

If the ambient light level is sufficient and/or the traffic conditions do not allow the main beam headlamps to be lit:
– The dipped beam headlamps remain lit. These indicator lamps come on on the instrument panel.
If the ambient light level is very low and traffic conditions permit:
– The main beam headlamps come on automatically. These indicator lamps come on on the instrument panel.
The function is deactivated if the fog lamps are switched on or the system detects dense fog.
When the fog lamps are switched off or the vehicle leaves the area of dense fog, the function is automatically reactivated.
This indicator lamp goes out when the function is deactivated.

Pause

If the situation requires a change of headlamp beam, the driver can take over at any time.
► A "headlamp flash" pauses the function:
- if the "AUTO" and "Dipped beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to main beam,
- if the "AUTO" and "Main beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to dipped beam.

To reactivate the system, flash the headlamps again.

The system may suffer interference or not work correctly:
– under conditions of poor visibility (snow, heavy rain, etc.),
– if the windscreen in front of the camera is dirty, misted or obscured (for example, by a sticker, etc.),
– if the vehicle is facing highly reflective signs.
When the system detects thick fog, it temporarily deactivates the function.
The system is not able to detect:
– road users that do not have their own lighting, such as pedestrians,
– vehicles whose lighting is obscured (for example: vehicles running behind a safety barrier on a motorway),
– vehicles at the top or bottom of a steep slope, on winding roads, on crossroads.

Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera.
The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera.
In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.
Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could obstruct the detection camera.

Guide-me-home and welcome lighting

Guide-me-home lighting

Automatic

With the ring in the "**AUTO**" position and when the light is poor, the dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when the ignition is switched off.

You can activate/deactivate this function and adjust the guide-me-home lighting duration in the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

Manual

► With the ignition off, pull the lighting control stalk toward you ("headlamp flash") to activate/deactivate the function.
Manual guide-me-home lighting goes off automatically after a period of time.

Welcome lighting

When the vehicle is unlocked, if the ambient light is low and the "Automatic illumination of headlamps" function is activated, this system automatically turns on certain exterior lamps as well as certain lamps in the passenger compartment.

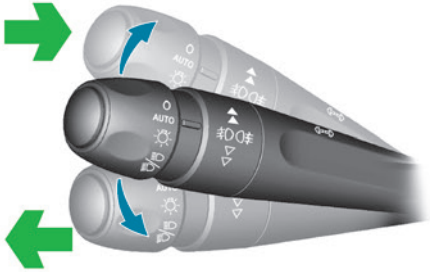
You can activate/deactivate this function and adjust the welcome lighting duration in the **Driving** / **Vehicle** touch screen menu.

Door mirror spotlamps

These spotlamps facilitate access to the vehicle by lighting the ground near the front doors.

When the front courtesy lamp switch is in this position, the spotlamps come on automatically:
– when the vehicle is unlocked.
– when a door is opened.
– when a request to locate the vehicle is received from the remote control.
– when the ignition is switched off.
They go off automatically after 30 seconds.

Direction indicators



► Left or right: lower or raise the lighting control stalk, beyond the point of resistance.

Three flashes

► Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

Headlamp beam height adjustment

Manual headlamp adjustment

To avoid dazzling other road users, the height of these headlamp beams must be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

0 (Initial setting)
Driver only or driver + front passenger
- Driver + front passenger + rear passengers
1 5 people
- 5 people + load in the boot
2 Driver + load in the boot

Automatic adjustment of the Full LED technology headlamps

This system automatically adjusts the height of the headlamp beams according to the load in the vehicle.

In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp comes on on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
The system then places the headlamp beams in the lowest position.
Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Do not touch the "Full LED" technology headlamps - risk of electrocution!

Wiper control stalk

Programming

Your vehicle may also include some functions that can be configured:
– automatic windscreen wipers,
– rear wiping on engaging reverse gear.

i In wintry conditions, remove snow, ice or frost present on the windscreen, around the wiper arms and blades and the windscreen seal, before operating the wipers.

! Do not operate the wipers on a dry windscreen. Under extremely hot or cold conditions, ensure that the wiper blades are not stuck to the windscreen before operating the wipers.

Manual controls

The wipers are controlled directly by the driver.

With manual wiping (intermittent)

With AUTO wiping

Windscreen wipers

► To select the wiping speed: raise or lower the stalk to the desired position.

2 Fast wiping (heavy rain)

1 Normal wiping (moderate rain)

Int Intermittent wiping (proportional to the vehicle's speed)

0 Switching off

Single wipe (press down and release).

or

AUTO Automatic wiping

Refer to the corresponding section.

Rear wiper

Rear wiper selection ring:

Off.

Intermittent wiping.

Wash-wipe (set duration).

Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation automatically if the windscreen wipers are operating.

► This function can be activated/deactivated via the **Vehicle/Driving** touch screen menu.

> This function is activated by default.

> If a significant accumulation of snow or ice is present, or when using a bicycle carrier on the boot, deactivate the automatic rear wiper.

Windscreen wash

► Pull the wiper control stalk towards you.
The screenwash then the windscreen wipers operate for a pre-determined time.

> On vehicles fitted with automatic air conditioning, any action on the windscreen wash control results in temporary closing of the air intake to avoid odours inside the passenger compartment.

Screenwash/headlamp wash level low

In the case of vehicles fitted with headlamp washers, when the fluid reservoir low level is reached, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.
The warning lamp comes on when the ignition is switched on, or every time the stalk is operated, until the reservoir is refilled.
Next time you stop, refill the screenwash / headlamp wash reservoir.

> To avoid damaging the wiper blades, do not operate the windscreen washer if the windscreen washer reservoir is empty.
> Only operate the windscreen washer if there is no risk of the fluid freezing on the windscreen and hindering visibility. Always use windscreen washer fluid suitable for low temperatures during the winter period.

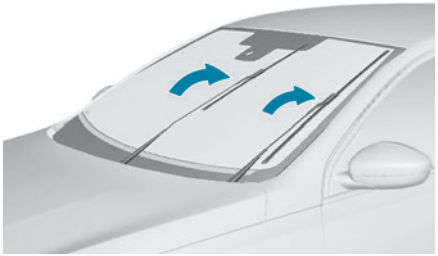
Special position of the windscreen wipers

This maintenance position is used while cleaning or replacing the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in wintry weather (ice, snow), to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.

> To maintain the effectiveness of the flat wiper blades, it is advisable to:
> – handle them with care.
> – clean them regularly using soapy water.

– avoid using them to hold cardboard on the windscreen.
– replace them at the first signs of wear.

Before removing a windscreen wiper blade



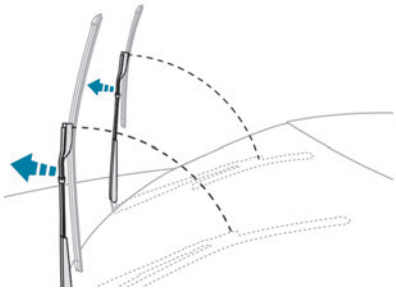
► Operating the wiper control stalk within one minute after switching off the ignition will place the wiper blades in a vertical position.
► Proceed with the desired operation or the replacement of the wiper blades.

After refitting a windscreen wiper blade

► To return the wiper blades to their initial position, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper control stalk.

Changing a wiper blade

Removing/Refitting at the front



► Carry out these wiper blade replacement operations from the driver's side.
► Starting with the wiper blade farthest from you, hold each arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.

! Do not touch the wiper blades - risk of irreparable deformation.
Do not release them while moving them. Risk of damaging the windscreen!

► Clean the windscreen using screenwash fluid.

i Do not apply "Rain X" type water-repellent products.

► Unclip the worn wiper blade closest to you and remove it.
► Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.
► Repeat the procedure for the other wiper blade.
► Starting with the wiper blade closest to you, once again hold each arm by the rigid section, then guide it carefully onto the windscreen.

Removing/refitting at the rear

► Hold the arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.
► Clean the rear screen using screenwash fluid.
► Unclip the worn wiper blade and remove it.
► Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.
► Once again hold the arm by the rigid section, then guide it carefully onto the rear screen.

Automatic windscreen wipers

In AUTO mode, the windscreen wipers operate automatically, without any action on the part of the driver. If rain is detected, the wiping adapts to the intensity of the rainfall automatically. Detection of rainfall is by means of a rain/sunshine sensor at the top centre of the windscreen, behind the rear view mirror.

! Do not cover the rain/sunshine sensor.
When using an automatic car wash, switch off the automatic wipers and the ignition.
In winter, wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic wipers.

Switching on

AUTO Give a short downwards push to the control.
A wiping cycle confirms that the instruction has been accepted.
This warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and a message is displayed.

Switching off

AUTO Give the control stalk a brief push downwards or place the control stalk in another position (Int, 1 or 2).
This warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel and a message is displayed.

i The automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers must be reactivated by pushing the control stalk downwards, if the ignition has been off for more than one minute.

Malfunction

If a fault occurs with the automatic wipers, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.
Have them checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

General safety recommendations

! Do not remove the labels attached in different places on your vehicle. They include safety warnings as well as identification information for the vehicle.

! For all work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, skills and equipment required, all of which a PEUGEOT dealer is able to provide.

! Depending on country regulations, certain safety equipment may be mandatory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalysers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle, etc.

! **Installing electrical accessories:**
– The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not approved by PEUGEOT may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer for information on the range of approved accessories.
– As a safety measure, access to the diagnostic socket, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for PEUGEOT dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The Manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.
– Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by PEUGEOT or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the Manufacturer will result in the suspension of the commercial warranty.

! **Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters**
Before installing a radio communication transmitter with an external aerial, you must without fail contact a PEUGEOT dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

i **Declarations of conformity for radio equipment**
The relevant certificates are available on the http://public.servicebox.peugeot.com/APddb/ website.

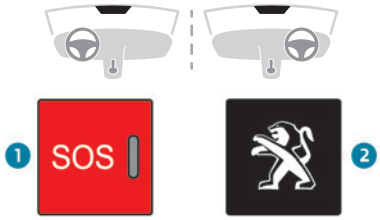
Hazard warning lamps

► Pressing the red button causes all the direction indicators to flash.
They can operate with the ignition off.

Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the rate of deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically. They switch off automatically when you next accelerate.
It is also possible to switch them off by pressing the button.

Emergency or assistance call (type 1)



Peugeot Connect SOS

In an emergency, press button **1** for more than 2 seconds.
The lighting of the indicator lamp and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the “Peugeot Connect SOS” call centre.*.
Pressing again immediately cancels the request.
The lamp remains lit until the call is ended.
"Peugeot Connect SOS" immediately geolocates your vehicle and contacts you in your language**, and - if necessary - requests that relevant emergency services be dispatched**.

In countries where the service is not available, or when the geolocation service has been expressly declined, the call is routed directly to the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location information.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, an emergency call is made automatically, independently of the deployment of any airbags.

Operation of the system

– Indicator lamp on (for 3 seconds) upon switching on the ignition: the system is operating correctly.
– Fixed red indicator lamp: system malfunction.
– Flashing red indicator lamp: replace the back-up battery.
In the last 2 cases, the emergency and assistance call services may not work.
Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

i The system fault does not prevent the vehicle from being driven.

Peugeot Connect Assistance

If the vehicle breaks down, press button **2** for more than 2 seconds to request assistance (confirmed by a voice message***).
Pressing again immediately cancels the request.

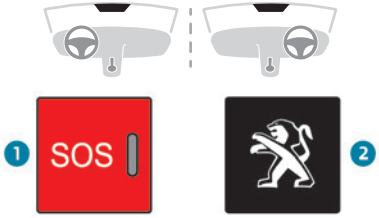
Geolocation

Deactivate/reactivate geolocation by simultaneously pressing buttons **1** and **2** and then pressing button **2** to confirm.

i If you benefit from the Peugeot Connect Packs offer with the SOS and Assistance Pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the website for your country.
For information about the SOS and Assistance Pack, please refer to the general conditions for these services.

* In accordance with the general conditions of use of the service, available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.
** Depending on the geographic coverage of "Peugeot Connect SOS", "Peugeot Connect Assistance" and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered and PEUGEOT CONNECT services provided is available from dealers or on the website for your country.
*** Depending on the geographic coverage of "Peugeot Connect SOS", "Peugeot Connect Assistance" and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered and PEUGEOT CONNECT services provided is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

Emergency or assistance call (type 2)



Peugeot Connect SOS (PE112)

► In an emergency, press button **1** for more than 2 seconds.
The lighting of the indicator lamp and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the emergency services*.
'Peugeot Connect SOS' immediately locates your vehicle and puts you in contact with the appropriate emergency services**.
► Pressing again immediately cancels the request.
The indicator lamp flashes when the vehicle data is sent, and then remains lit when communication is established.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, an emergency call is made automatically, independently of the deployment of any airbags.

i 'Peugeot Connect SOS' is a service that can be accessed free of charge.

System operation

– Upon switching on the ignition, if the indicator lamp lights up red, then green, and then goes out: the system is operating correctly.
– If the indicator lamp is fixed red: system malfunction
– If the indicator lamp flashes red: replace the emergency battery.
In the latter two cases, emergency and assistance call services may not work.
Contact a dealer or a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

i The system fault does not prevent the vehicle from being driven.

i **Data processing**
All processing of personal information by the "Peugeot Connect SOS" system (PE112) complies with the framework for protection of personal information established by Regulation 2016/679 (GDPR) and Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and the Council, and in particular, seeks to protect the vital interests of the data subject, in accordance with Article 6.1, paragraph d) of Regulation 2016/679.
Personal information processing is strictly limited to the management of the "Peugeot Connect SOS" system used with the "112" European single emergency call number.
The "Peugeot Connect SOS" system is able to collect and process only the following data relating to the vehicle: chassis number, type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle), fuel type or power source, most recent three locations and direction of travel, and a timestamped log file recording the automatic activation of the system.
The recipients of the processed data are the emergency call handling centres designated by the relevant national authorities in the territory in which they are located, enabling priority reception and handling of calls to the "112" emergency number.

i **Data storage**
Data contained in the system's memory is not accessible from outside the system until

* In accordance with the general conditions of use of the service, available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.
** In areas covered by 'Peugeot Connect SOS' and 'Peugeot Connect Assistance'.
The list of countries covered and telematic services provided is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

a call is made. The system is not traceable and is not continuously monitored in its normal operating mode.
The data in the system's internal memory is automatically and continuously erased. Only the vehicle's three most recent locations are stored.
When an emergency call is triggered, the data log is stored for no more than 13 hours.

Access to data
You have the right to access the data and, if necessary, submit a request to rectify, erase or restrict the processing of any personal information not processed in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 2016/679 (GDPR). Third parties to which data has been communicated shall be notified of any rectification, erasure or restriction carried out in accordance with the aforementioned Directive, unless doing so would be impossible or require a disproportionate effort. You also have the right to lodge a complaint with the relevant data protection authority.

Peugeot Connect Assistance

► If the vehicle breaks down, press button **2** for more than 2 seconds to request assistance (confirmed by a voice message*).
► Pressing again immediately cancels the request.

Privacy mode allows you to manage the level of sharing (data and/or position) between your vehicle and the PEUGEOT brand.
It can be configured in the **Settings** menu on the touch screen.
By default, depending on equipment, deactivate/reactivate geolocation by simultaneously pressing the 2 buttons, then press the "Peugeot Connect Assistance" button to confirm.

If you purchased your vehicle outside the PEUGEOT dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modify them to suit your wishes. In a multilingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

For technical reasons, in particular to improve the quality of telematic services for customers, the Manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system at any time.

If you benefit from the Peugeot Connect Packs offer with the SOS and Assistance Pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the website for your country.
For information about the SOS and Assistance Pack, please refer to the general conditions for these services.

Horn

* According to the geographic coverage of 'Peugeot Connect SOS', 'Peugeot Connect Assistance' and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered and telematic services provided is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

► Press the central part of the steering wheel.

Electronic stability control (ESC)

The electronic stability control programme includes the following systems:
– Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).
– Emergency braking assistance (EBA).
– Anti-slip regulation (ASR).
– Dynamic stability control (DSC).
– Trailer stability assist (TSA).

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

These systems enhance the vehicle's stability and handling during braking, and enable greater control while cornering, particularly on poor or slippery road surfaces.
ABS prevents wheel locking in the event of emergency braking.
EBFD manages the braking pressure wheel by wheel.

This warning lamp comes on fixed in the event of an ABS malfunction.
The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at a moderate speed.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

This warning lamp, when lit together with the ABS warning lamp, accompanied by a message and an audible signal, indicates an EBFD malfunction.
You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i The normal operation of the ABS may result in slight vibrations in the brake pedal.

! **When braking in an emergency, press very firmly and maintain this pressure.**

! When changing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that these are approved for your vehicle.

! After an impact, have these systems checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Emergency braking assistance (EBA)

In an emergency, this system enables you to reach the optimum braking pressure more quickly and therefore reduce the stopping distance.
It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed. This is felt by a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR) / Dynamic stability control (DSC)

Anti-slip regulation optimises traction using engine braking and by applying the brakes on the driving wheels to avoid wheel spinning. It also enhances the vehicle's directional stability while accelerating.
If there is a difference between the vehicle's trajectory and the path desired by the driver, the dynamic stability control system automatically uses engine braking and the brakes on one or more wheels to return the vehicle to the desired path, within the limits of the laws of physics.
These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started.
They come into operation in the event of a grip or trajectory problem.

This warning lamp on the instrument panel flashes to indicate that they are operating.

Deactivation/Reactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground, etc.), it may be advisable to deactivate these systems, so that the wheels can turn freely and regain grip.

With GTi version

► Press this button to deactivate DSC and ASR.

Except GTi version

► Select "**Traction control**" from the "**Driving functions**" menu on the touch screen to deactivate ASR.

Deactivation is confirmed when this indicator lamp is displayed on the instrument panel accompanied by a message and, depending on version, the lighting of the indicator lamp in the button.

Reactivate the system(s) when normal grip is restored.

This/these system(s) is/are reactivated automatically each time the ignition is switched off or above 31 mph (50 km/h) (except GTi version).

Below 31 mph (50 km/h), reactivate them manually.

With GTi version

► Press this button again to reactivate DSC and ASR.

Except GTi version

► Select **Traction control** from the **Driving functions** menu on the touch screen to reactivate ASR.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction of these systems, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the systems checked.

! ASR / DSC

These systems enhance safety during normal driving, but should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.

It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep these systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.

Correct operation of these systems depends on compliance with the manufacturer's recommendations relating to the wheels (tyres and rims), braking and electronic components, as well as the assembly and repair procedures used by PEUGEOT dealers.

The use of snow tyres is recommended, to ensure that these systems remain effective in winter conditions. All four wheels must be fitted with tyres approved for the vehicle.

Trailer stability assist (TSA)

When towing, this system reduces the risk of the vehicle or trailer swaying.

Operation

The system is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

The electronic stability control system (ESC) must not have any faults.

At speeds between 37 and 99 mph (60 and 160 km/h), if the system detects oscillating trailer movements (snaking), it applies the brakes to stabilise the trailer and, if necessary, reduces engine power to slow the vehicle.

This warning lamp flashes on the instrument panel and the brake lamps light up to draw attention to this corrective action.

For information on weights and towed loads, refer to the **Engine Technical Data and Towed Loads** section or your vehicle's registration certificate

To ensure safe driving with a **Towing device**, refer to the corresponding section.

Malfunction

If a fault occurs, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.

If you wish to continue towing a trailer, reduce your speed and drive carefully!

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

! The trailer stability control system provides an extra safety feature under normal driving conditions, when following the recommendations for use of trailers and current legislation in force in your country.
This must not encourage the driver to take extra risks, such as using a trailer in sub-optimal conditions (excessive load, failure to observe trailer nose weight, worn or under-inflated tyres, faulty braking system, etc.) or driving at excessive speeds.
In certain cases, the system may not detect trailer snaking, particularly with a light trailer.
When driving on slippery or poor surfaces, the system may not be able to prevent sudden trailer snaking.

Seat belts

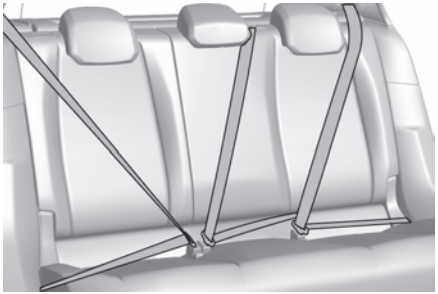
Inertia reel
The seat belts are equipped with an inertia reel which allows the strap length to automatically adjust to your shape. The seat belt returns to its storage automatically when it is not used.
The inertia reels are fitted with a device which automatically locks the strap in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. It can be released by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.
Pyrotechnic pretensioning
This system improves safety in the event of a frontal or side impact.
Depending on the severity of the impact, the pyrotechnic pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.
The pyrotechnic pretensioning seat belts are enabled when the ignition is on.
Force limiter
This system reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, thus improving their protection.

! **In the event of an impact**
Depending on the nature and seriousness of impacts, the pyrotechnic pretensioner device may trigger before and independently of airbag deployment.
Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.
In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.
Following an impact, have the seat belt system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Front seat belts

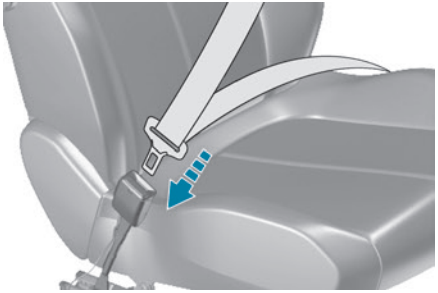
The front seat belts are fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning system and a force limiting system.

Rear seat belts



Each of the rear seats has a three-point seat belt with inertia reel.
The outer seats are fitted with a force limiting system.

Fastening



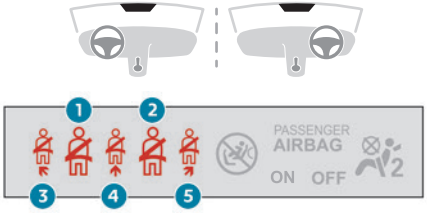
► Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.

► Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unlocking

► Press the red button on the buckle.
► Guide the seat belt as it is reeled in.

Seat belt not fastened/ unfastened alerts



1. Front left seat belt warning lamp
2. Front right seat belt warning lamp
3. Rear left seat belt warning lamp
4. Rear centre seat belt warning lamp
5. Rear right seat belt warning lamp

If the corresponding seat belt is not fastened or is unfastened, when the ignition is switched on, the seat belts warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the corresponding warning lamp (**1** to **5**) comes on in red in the seat belt and front passenger airbag warning lamps display.

> **i** If a rear seat belt is not fastened, the corresponding warning lamp (**3** to **5**) comes on for around 30 seconds.

Above about 12 mph (20 km/h) and for 2 minutes, each warning lamp corresponding to an occupied seat whose seat belt is unfastened flashes, accompanied by an audible signal. After these 2 minutes, the corresponding seat warning lamp remains on until the driver or the front/rear passenger fasten their seat belt.

Advice

> **!** The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off.
> Wherever seated in the vehicle, you must always fasten the seat belt, even for short journeys.
> Do not interchange the seat belt buckles, as they will not fulfil their role fully.
> Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.
> After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

> **!** **Installation**
> The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.
> The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.
> In order to be effective, a seat belt:
> – must be tightened as close to the body as possible;

– must be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, ensuring that it is not twisted;
– must only be used to secure one person;
– must not show signs of tearing or fraying;
– must not be changed or modified, in order to avoid affecting its performance.

Recommendations for children
Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.
Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one child.
Never carry a child on your lap.
For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

Maintenance
In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle's seat belts, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a PEUGEOT dealer is able to provide.
Have the seat belts checked regularly by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.
Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by PEUGEOT dealers.

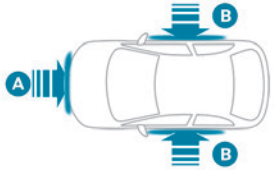
Airbags

General information

System designed to help improve the safety of the occupants sitting in the front seats and the rear outer seats, in the event of a violent collision. The airbags supplement the action of the seat belts equipped with a force limiting system.
Electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:
– In the event of violent impact, the airbags deploy instantly and help better protect the occupants of the vehicle; immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly in order not to hinder the visibility or the possible exit of the occupants.
– In the event of a slight impact, a rear impact and under certain rollover conditions, the airbags may not deploy; only the seat belt helps to protect you in these situations.
The seriousness of the impact depends on the nature of the obstacle and the speed of the vehicle at the moment of collision.

The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.
This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

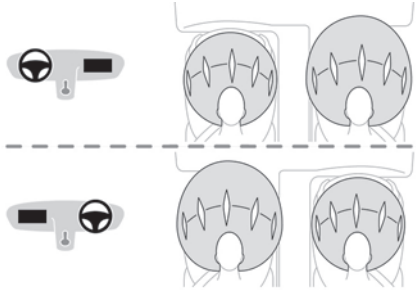
Impact detection zones



A. Front impact zone
B. Side impact zone

When one or more airbags are deployed, the detonation of the pyrotechnic charge incorporated in the system makes a noise and releases a small quantity of smoke.
This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation.
The detonation noise associated with the deployment of one or more airbags may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

Front airbags



System that protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact, limiting the risk of head and chest injury.
The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

Deployment

They deploy, except the front passenger airbag if it is deactivated*, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone **A**.
The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger's side, to cushion their forward movement.

Lateral airbags

In the event of a serious side impact, this system protects the driver and front passenger to mitigate the risk of injury to the chest, between the hip and the shoulder.
Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, on the door side.

Deployment

They are deployed on one side in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**.
The lateral airbag inflates between the hip and shoulder of the vehicle's occupant and the corresponding door trim panel.

Curtain airbags

System contributing towards greater protection for the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head.
Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment

It deploys simultaneously with the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**.
The curtain airbag inflates between the front and rear occupants of the vehicle and the corresponding windows.

Malfunction

If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, you must contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.
The airbags may not be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

! In the event of a minor impact or bump at the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed.
In the event of a rear or front collision, none of the lateral airbags are deployed.

* For more information on Deactivating the front passenger airbag, refer to the corresponding section.

Advice

For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below.
Adopt a normal upright sitting position.
Fasten the seat belt ensuring it is correctly positioned and adjusted.
Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object, etc.), nor fix or attach anything close to or in the way of the airbag release trajectory; this could cause injuries during their deployment.
Never modify the original definition of your vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.
After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen, have the airbag systems checked.
All work on the airbag systems must only be performed by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms cannot be ruled out when an airbag is deployed. The airbag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

Front airbags
Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.
Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.
Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.
Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.
Do not fix or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, as this could cause injuries when the airbags are deployed.

Lateral airbags
Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment of the lateral airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer.
Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backrests (clothes, etc.), as this could cause injuries to the thorax or arm when the lateral airbag is deployed.
Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.
The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.
A damaged door or any unauthorised or incorrectly executed work (modification or repair) on the front doors or their interior trim could compromise the operation of these sensors - risk of malfunction of the lateral airbags!
Such work must only be done by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Curtain airbags
Do not fix or attach anything to the roof, as this could cause head injuries when the curtain airbag is deployed.
Do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, as they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

Child seats

The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:
– In accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than 4 ft 11” (150 cm) tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings.
– **Statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats.**
– **Children weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the "rear facing" position, whether in the front or rear of the vehicle.**

It is recommended that children travel on the **rear seats** of the vehicle:
– '**rear facing**' up to the age of 3,
– '**forward facing**' over the age of 3.

Make sure that the seat belt is correctly positioned and tightened.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in firm and steady contact with the floor.

Advice

An incorrectly installed child seat compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident.
Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it.
Remember to fasten the seat belts or the harness of child seats, keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.
When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the seat of the vehicle.
If the passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.
Remove the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat.

Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

Installing a booster seat
The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.
Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.
Use a booster seat with backrest, equipped with a belt guide at shoulder level.

Additional protections
To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the "Child lock".
Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.
To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.
As a safety precaution, do not leave:
– a child alone and unattended in a vehicle,
– a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
– the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

Child seat at the rear

"Forward facing" or "Rearward facing"

► Move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the "forward facing" child seat or the "rearward facing" child seat itself do not touch the vehicle's front seat.
► Verify that the backrest of the "forward facing" child seat is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle's rear seat, and is ideally in contact with it.

Centre rear seat

A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the **centre rear passenger seat**.

Child seat at the front

► Adjust the front passenger seat to the **highest** and **fully back longitudinal position**, **with the backrest straightened**.

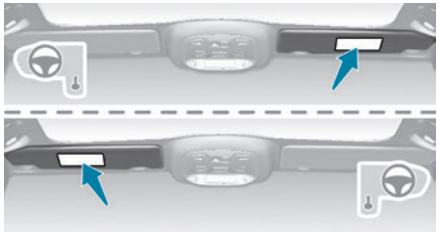
"Forward facing"

! You must leave the front passenger airbag active.

"Rearward facing"

! The front passenger airbag must be deactivated before installing a rearward facing child seat. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag deploys**.

Warning label - Front passenger airbag



You must comply with the following instruction, reminded by the warning label on both sides of the passenger sun visor:

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

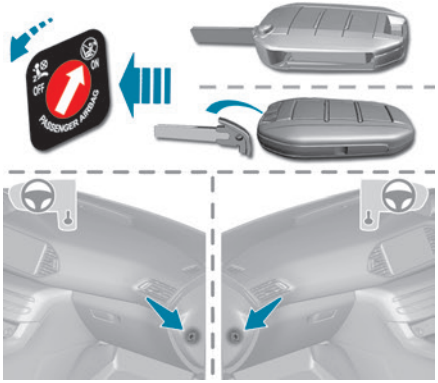
Passenger airbag OFF

! To ensure the safety of the child, the front passenger airbag MUST be deactivated when a "rearward facing" child seat is installed on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, the child risks being seriously injured or killed in the event of deployment of the airbag.

! **Vehicles not equipped with a deactivation/reactivation control**
Installing a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat is strictly prohibited - risk of death or serious injury in the event of airbag deployment!

Deactivating/Reactivating the front passenger airbag

For vehicles on which it is fitted, the switch is located on the side of the glove box.



With the ignition off:

► To deactivate the airbag, turn the key in the switch to the "**OFF**" position.

► To reactivate it, turn the key to the "**ON**" position.

When the ignition is switched on:

This warning lamp comes on and remains lit to signal deactivation.

Or

This warning lamp comes on for about 1 minute to signal activation.

Recommended child seats

Approved range of recommended child seats secured using a **three-point seat belt**.

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg
L1 "RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus" Installed in the rearward facing position.

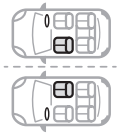
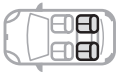
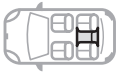
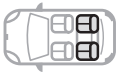
Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg
L4 "KLIPPAN Optima" From 22 kg (approximately 6 years), the booster is used on its own.

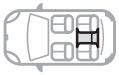
Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg

Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg
L5 "RÖMER KIDFIX" Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings. The child is restrained by the seat belt.

Locations for child seats secured using the seat belt

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved **(a)** in relation to the weight of the child and the seat position in the vehicle.

Weight of the child/indicative age					
Seat		**Under 13 kg** (groups 0 **(b)** and 0+) Up to about 1 year old	**From 9 to 18 kg** (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old	**From 15 to 25 kg** (group 2) From about 3 to 6 years old	**From 22 to 36 kg** (group 3) From about 6 to 10 years old
Front passenger seat **(c)** **(d)** with booster and without booster (straightened backrest)		**U (R)**	**U (R)**	**U (R)**	**U (R)**
Hatchback					
Rear side seats (e)		**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**
Rear centre seats (e)		**U (f)**	**U (f)**	**X**	**X**
SW					
Rear side seats (e)		**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**

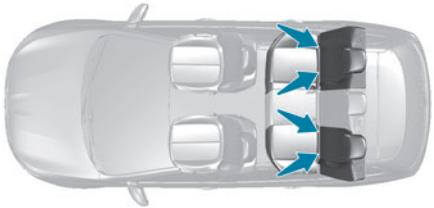
Weight of the child/indicative age					
Seat		**Under 13 kg** (groups 0 **(b)** and 0+) Up to about 1 year old	**From 9 to 18 kg** (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old	**From 15 to 25 kg** (group 2) From about 3 to 6 years old	**From 22 to 36 kg** (group 3) From about 6 to 10 years old
Rear centre seats (e)		**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**

U: Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing".
U(R): Same as for **U**, with the vehicle seat adjusted to the highest position, pushed fully back.
X: Seat position not suitable for installing a child seat for the weight group indicated.
(a): Universal child seat: child seat which can be installed in any vehicle using the seat belt.
(b): Group 0: birth to 10 kg. Carrycots and "car" infant carriers cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.
(c): Refer to the current legislation in the country in which you are driving before installing a child in this seat position.
(d): When a "rearward facing" child seat is installed on the front passenger seat, the passenger airbag must be deactivated. Otherwise, the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed.
When a "forward facing" child seat is installed on the front passenger seat, leave the passenger airbag activated.
(e): To install a "rearward facing" or "forward facing" child seat at the rear, move the front seat forward, then straighten the backrest to allow enough room for the child seat and the child's legs.
(f): A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the rear centre passenger seat.

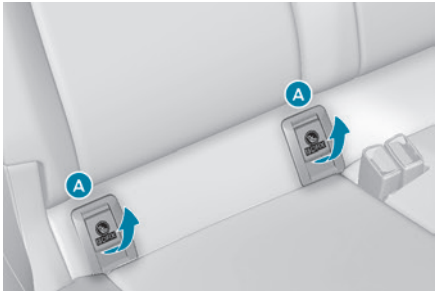
Remove and stow the seat's head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest on a passenger seat.
Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

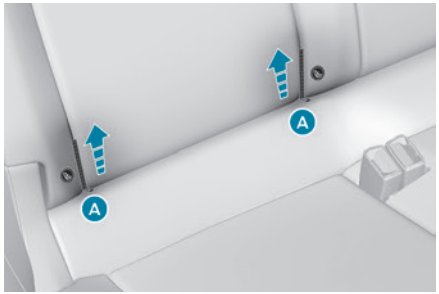
“ISOFIX" mountings

The seats shown below are fitted with ISOFIX compliant mountings:



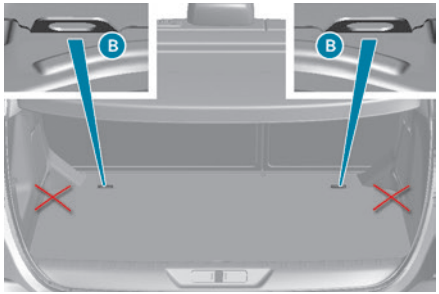
The mountings comprise three rings for each seat, indicated by a marking:
– Two rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat backrest and cushion.





These rings are located behind covers (hatchback) or zips (SW).
To access them:
► Unclip the cover by pulling it forwards then pivot it upwards (hatchback).
► Pull the zip up to open it (SW).

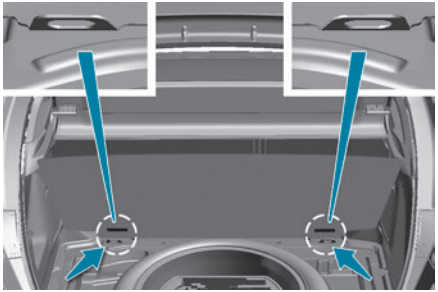
The 2 latches of **ISOFIX child seats** are secured to them.
– One ring **B,** located behind the seat, called the **TOP TETHER**, for fixing seats fitted with an upper strap.



This system prevents the child seat from tipping forwards in the event of a front impact.
This ISOFIX mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in the vehicle.
To secure the child seat to the **TOP TETHER**:
► Remove and stow the head restraint before installing the child seat on this seat (refit it once the child seat has been removed).
► Pass the strap of the child seat behind the seat backrest, in between the 2 head restraint anchoring points.
► Secure the upper strap hook to ring **B**.
► Tighten the upper strap.

An incorrectly installed child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident.
Strictly observe the fitting instructions provided in the user guide supplied with the child seat.

For information about the options for fitting ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle, refer to the summary table.



If your vehicle has a spare wheel of the same size as the other four wheels, follow the procedure below:

► pass the strap and spring hook over the boot floor (in the slot),
► raise the boot floor,
► lift out the upper storage box, located alongside the wheel,
► attach the spring hook to the **TOP TETHER** ring,
► refit the storage box and boot floor.

Recommended ISOFIX child seats

Also consult the user guide from the child seat's manufacturer to find out how to install and remove the seat.

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus and its ISOFIX base" (size category: **E**)
Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg
Installed "rearward facing" using an ISOFIX base which is attached to rings **A**. The base has a support leg, height-adjustable, which rests on the vehicle's floor. This child seat can also be secured with a seat belt. In this case, only the shell is used and attached to the vehicle seat using the three-point seat belt.

"Baby P2C Midi with ISOFIX base" (size categories: **D, C, A, B, B1**)
Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg

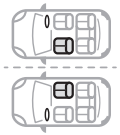
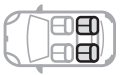
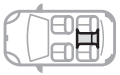
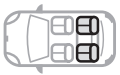
"Baby P2C Midi with ISOFIX base" (size categories: **D, C, A, B, B1**)
Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg
Installed rearward facing using an ISOFIX base which is attached to rings **A**. The base has a support leg, height-adjustable, which rests on the vehicle's floor. This child seat can also be used "forward facing". This child seat **cannot** be secured using a seat belt. We recommend that you use the seat in the "rearward facing"position up to the age of 3 years.

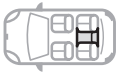
"RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX" (size category: **B1**)
Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg

"RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX" (size category: **B1**)
Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg
Suitable for forward-facing installation only. Attached to rings **A** and ring **B**, referred to as TOP TETHER, using an upper strap. Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying down. This child seat can also be used in seat positions not equipped with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be secured to the vehicle's seat by the three-point seat belt. Adjust the front seat of the vehicle so that the child's feet do not touch the backrest.

Locations for ISOFIX child seats

In accordance with European regulations, this table shows the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on vehicle seats fitted with ISOFIX mountings.
In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

		Weight of the child/indicative age									
		Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months old		**Under 10 kg (group 0) Under 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to about 1 year old			**From 9 to 18 kg (group 1)** From about 1 to 3 years old				
Type of ISOFIX child seat		**Carrycot**		**"rearward facing"**			**"rearward facing"**		**"forward facing"**		
ISOFIX size category		**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**
Front passenger seat		Not ISOFIX									
Hatchback											
Rear side seats		**IL-SU (a+b)**		**IL-SU (c)**	**IL-SU (a)**		**IL-SU (c)**	**IL-SU (a)**	**IUF IL-SU**		
Rear centre seat		Not ISOFIX									
SW											
Rear side seats		**IL-SU (a+b)**		**IL-SU (c)**	**IL-SU (a)**		**IL-SU (c)**	**IL-SU (a)**	**IUF IL-SU**		

		Weight of the child/indicative age									
		Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months old		**Under 10 kg (group 0) Under 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to about 1 year old			**From 9 to 18 kg (group 1)** From about 1 to 3 years old				
Type of ISOFIX child seat		**Carrycot**		**"rearward facing"**			**"rearward facing"**		**"forward facing"**		
ISOFIX size category		**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**
Rear centre seat		Not ISOFIX									

IUF: Seat position suitable for installing an **I**sofix **U**niversal seat, "**F**orward facing", secured using the upper strap.
IL-SU: Seat position suitable for installing an **I**sofix **S**emi-**U**niversal seat either:
– "rearward facing" fitted with an upper strap or a support leg
– "forward facing" fitted with a support leg
– a carrycot fitted with an upper strap or a support leg
(a): Move the front seat without booster forward by one notch from its mid-position along its track. A seat with booster must be adjusted to its highest position.
(b): Installing a carrycot on a side seat prevents the other two rear seats from being used.
(c): A seat with booster must be adjusted to its highest position. Move the front seat without booster forward by 5 notches from its mid-position along its track.

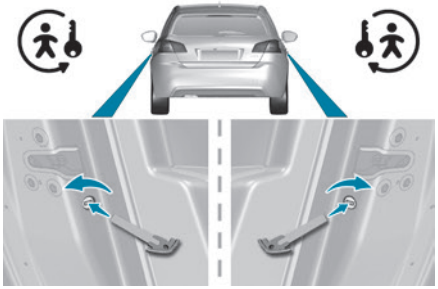
For more information on **ISOFIX mountings and child seats** and the upper strap in particular, refer to the corresponding section.

Remove and stow the seat's head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest on a passenger seat.
Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

Child lock

This mechanical system prevents opening of a rear door using its interior control.
The control is located on the edge of each rear door and locking is independent for each door.

Locking



► Using the built-in key, turn the control as far as it will go:
- to the left on the left-hand rear door,
- to the right on the right-hand rear door.

Unlocking

► Using the built-in key, turn the control as far as it will go:
- to the right on the left-hand rear door,
- to the left on the right-hand rear door.

Advice

! An incorrectly installed child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident.
Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it.
Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harness keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.
When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly to the seat of your vehicle. If your passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.
The head restraint must be removed before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat.
Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

! **Children at the rear**
At rear seating positions, always leave sufficient space between the front seat and:
– a "rearward facing" child seat,
– the child's feet for a child seat fitted "forward facing".
To do this, move the front seat forwards and, if necessary, straighten its backrest.
For optimal installation of the "forward facing" child seat, verify that its backrest is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle seat, if possible in contact with it.

! **Children at the front**
The legislation on carrying children on the front passenger seat is specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.
Deactivate the front passenger airbag when a "rearward facing" child seat is installed on the front passenger seat.
Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

! **Installing a booster seat**
The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.
Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.
We recommend using a booster seat with backrest, equipped with a belt guide at shoulder level.

Additional protections

To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the "Child lock". Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.

To protect young children from direct sunlight, fit side blinds to the rear windows.

As a safety precaution, do not leave:

– a child or children alone and unattended in a vehicle,

– a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,

– the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

Driving recommendations

► Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.
► Monitor your environment and keep your hands on the wheel to be able to react to anything that may happen any time.
► Drive smoothly, anticipate the need for braking and maintain a longer safety distance, especially in bad weather.
► Stop the vehicle to carry out operations that require close attention (such as adjustments).
► During long trips, take a break every two hours.

Important!

! **Never leave the engine running in a closed space without sufficient ventilation.** Internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases such as carbon monoxide. Danger of poisoning and death!

! In severe wintry conditions (temperature below -23°C), let the engine run for 4 minutes before moving off, to ensure the correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of your vehicle (engine and gearbox).

! **Never drive with the parking brake applied**. Risk of overheating and damage to the braking system!

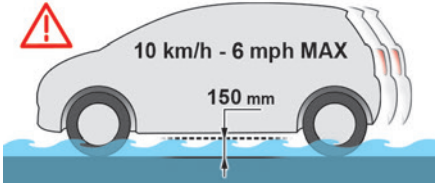
! **Do not park the vehicle or leave the engine running on a flammable surface (dry grass, dead leaves, etc.).** The exhaust system of your vehicle is very hot, even several minutes after the engine stops. Risk of fire!

! **Never leave a vehicle unattended with the engine running.** If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P** (depending on the type of gearbox).

! **Never leave children inside the vehicle unsupervised**.

On flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to the electrical systems of your vehicle.



If you are obliged to drive on a flooded road:

► check that the depth of water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users,
► deactivate the Stop & Start function,
► drive as slowly as possible without stalling. In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h),
► do not stop and do not switch off the engine.

On leaving the flooded road, as soon as safety conditions allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads.
If in doubt about the state of your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Towing

! Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and particular care must be taken.

i Do not exceed the maximum towable weights.
At altitude: reduce the maximum load by 10% per 1,000 metres of altitude; the lower air density at high altitudes decreases engine performance.

! **New vehicle:** do not tow a trailer until the vehicle has driven at least 620 miles (1,000 kilometres).

If the outside temperature is high, let the engine idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to help it to cool.

Before setting off

Nose weight

► Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight (at the point where it joins your vehicle) approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Tyres

► Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

► Check the electrical signalling on the trailer and the headlamp beam height of your vehicle.

If a genuine PEUGEOT towing device is used, the rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically to avoid the audible signal.

When driving

Cooling

Towing a trailer uphill causes the coolant temperature to increase. The maximum towable load depends on the gradient and the exterior temperature. The fan's cooling capacity does not increase with engine speed.

► Reduce speed and lower the engine speed to limit the amount of heating produced.

In all cases, pay attention to the coolant temperature.

If this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

Brakes

Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer. To avoid overheating the brakes, the use of engine braking is recommended.

Side wind

Bear in mind that the vehicle will be more susceptible to wind when towing.

Anti-theft protection

Electronic immobiliser

The key contains an electronic chip which has a special code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.

This electronic engine immobiliser locks the engine management system a few minutes after the ignition is switched off, and prevents the engine being started by anyone who does not have the key.

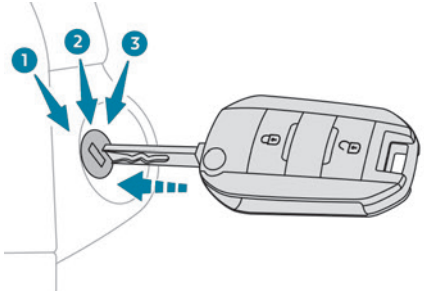
In the event of a fault, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message in the screen.In this case, your vehicle will not start; contact a PEUGEOT dealer as soon as possible.

Keep safely, away from your vehicle, the label attached to the keys given to you when you purchased your vehicle.

Starting/Switching off the engine, remote control key

Place the gear lever into neutral.

Ignition switch



1.**Stop** position.
2.**Ignition on** position.
3.**Starting** position.

Starting with the key

The parking brake must be applied.

► With a manual gearbox in neutral, fully depress the clutch pedal.
► With an automatic gearbox in mode **P** or **N**, fully depress the brake pedal.
► Insert the key into the ignition switch.

– The system recognises the starting code.
► Unlock the steering column by simultaneously turning the steering wheel and the key.

> In some cases, you may have to apply some force to turn the wheels (if the wheels are turned against a kerb, for example).

► With a petrol engine, operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. As soon as the engine starts, release the key.
► With a Diesel engine, turn the key to position **2**, ignition on, to operate the engine preheating system.

► Wait until this warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel, then turn the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, to operate the starter motor until the engine starts. As soon as the engine starts, release the key.

> In wintry conditions, the warning lamp may stay on for a longer period.
When the engine is hot, the warning lamp does not come on.

> If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition.
Wait a few seconds before operating the starter motor again. If the engine does not start after several attempts, do not keep trying: you risk damaging the starter motor and the engine.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

> In mild conditions, do not leave the engine to warm up while stationary, but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.

> Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. Danger of poisoning and death!
In very severe wintry conditions (temperature below -23°C), the engine should be left to idle for 4 minutes before moving off to ensure the correct operation and service life of the mechanical parts of your vehicle, engine and gearbox.

Switching off using the key

► Immobilise the vehicle.
► Turn the key fully towards you to position **1 (Stop)**.
► Remove the key from the ignition switch.
► To lock the steering column, turn the steering wheel until it locks.

> To facilitate unlocking of the steering column, it is recommended that the wheels be returned to the straight ahead position before switching off the engine.

► Check that the parking brake is correctly applied, particularly on sloping ground.
– With a manual parking brake, the lever must be pulled up.

– With an electric parking brake, the indicator lamp in the control lever must be on.

> Never switch off the ignition before the complete immobilisation of the vehicle.

> When leaving the vehicle, remove the key and lock the doors.

> Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

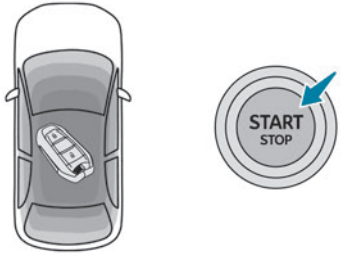
> Avoid attaching heavy objects to the key or the remote control, which would weigh

down on its blade in the ignition switch and could cause a malfunction.

Key left in
If the key has been left in the ignition switch at position **2 (Ignition on)**, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour.
To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **1 (Stop)**, then back to position **2 (Ignition on)**.

Starting/switching off the engine,"Keyless Entry and Starting"

Starting



► Place the electronic key inside the vehicle, in the recognition zone.

► If your vehicle has a manual gearbox, place the gear lever in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.
► If your vehicle has an automatic gearbox, from position **P** or **N**, fully depress the brake pedal.
► Press the "**START/STOP**" button.
The steering column unlocks and the engine starts.
On certain versions with automatic gearbox, the steering column does not lock.

For **Diesel vehicles**, in sub-zero temperatures the engine will not start until the pre-heater warning lamp has gone off.
If this warning lamp comes on after pressing the "START/STOP" button, press down on the brake or clutch pedal until the warning lamp goes off, without pressing the "START/STOP" button again, until the engine starts and runs.

It is essential that the "Keyless Entry and Starting" electronic key is within the recognition zone. As a safety measure, do not leave this zone with the vehicle running.
A message is displayed if the electronic key is not detected in the zone. Move the electronic key into the zone to be able to start the engine.

If one of the starting conditions is not met, a reminder message is displayed on the instrument panel. In some circumstances, it is necessary to turn the steering wheel while pressing the "START/STOP" button to assist unlocking of the steering column; a message warns you when this is needed.

With **petrol engines**, after a cold start, preheating the catalytic converter can cause clearly-felt engine vibrations for anything up to 2 minutes while stationary with the engine running (accelerated idle speed).

Switching off

► Immobilise the vehicle.
► With the electronic key inside the vehicle, press the "**START/STOP**" button.
The engine stops and the steering column locks.

If the vehicle is not immobilised, the engine will not stop.

Switching the ignition on (without starting)

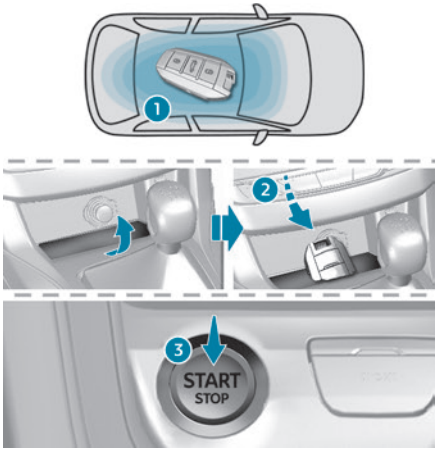
With the Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key inside the vehicle, pressing the "**START/STOP**" button, **with no action on the pedals**, allows the ignition to be switched on.
This also allows the accessories to be activated (e.g. radio, lighting, etc.).

► Press the "**START/STOP**" button; the instrument panel comes on but the engine does not start.
► Press the button again to switch off the ignition and allow the vehicle to be locked.

> **i** With the ignition on, the system automatically goes into energy economy mode to maintain an adequate state of charge in the battery.

Key not detected

Back-up starting



If the electronic key is in the recognition zone and your vehicle does not start after pressing the "START/STOP" button:
► Insert the electronic key in the reader.
► If your vehicle has a manual gearbox, place the gear lever in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.
► If your vehicle has an automatic gearbox, place the selector at position **P** then fully depress the brake pedal.
► Press the "START/STOP" button.

– The engine starts.

Back-up switch-off

If the electronic key is not detected or is no longer in the recognition zone, a message appears in the instrument panel when closing a door or trying to switch off the engine.
► To confirm the instruction to switch off the engine, press the "**START/STOP**" button for about five seconds.
In the event of a fault with the electronic key, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Emergency switch-off

In case of emergency only, the engine can be switched off without conditions (even when driving).
Press the "**START/STOP**" button for about five seconds.

In this case, the steering column locks as soon as the vehicle stops.
On certain versions with automatic gearbox (EAT6/EAT8), the steering column does not lock.

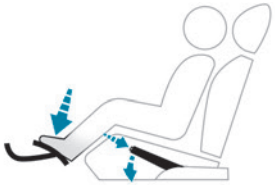
> **i** **Key left in the ignition**
> You will be warned by a message if the electronic key is still in the reader on opening the driver's door.

Manual parking brake

Locking

► With your foot on the brake pedal, pull the parking brake lever up to immobilise your vehicle.

Unlocking



► With your foot on the brake pedal, pull the parking brake lever up gently, press the release button then lower the lever fully.
When the vehicle is being driven, this warning lamp coming on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, indicates that

the parking brake is still on or has not been fully released.

! When parking on a slope, direct your wheels against the kerb, apply the parking brake, engage a gear and switch off the ignition.

i Pressing the brake pedal facilitates the application and release of the manual parking brake.

Electric parking brake

This system applies the parking brake when the engine is switched off and releases it as the vehicle moves off.

Indicator lamp

This indicator lamp lights up on the instrument panel and on the control lever to confirm the application of the parking brake.

It goes off to confirm the release of the parking brake.

The driver can take over at any time to apply or release the parking brake, by operating the control lever.

– By briefly **pulling** the control lever to apply it.
– By briefly **pushing** the control lever, while pressing the brake pedal, to release it.

The indicator lamp on the control lever flashes during manual application or release.

! In the event of a battery failure, the electric parking brake no longer works.
As a safety measure, if the parking brake is not applied:
With a manual gearbox, immobilise the vehicle by engaging a gear.
With an EAT6 automatic gearbox, immobilise the vehicle by putting the selector at **P**.
With an EAT8 automatic gearbox, immobilise the vehicle by putting a chock against one of the wheels.
Consult a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle with the ignition on, as they could release the parking brake.

! When towing, parking on a steep slope, or if your vehicle is heavily laden, turn the wheels towards the kerb and engage a gear.
For towing, your vehicle is approved for parking on slopes of up to 12%.

! The technology adopted for the electric parking brake does not allow the mounting of 15-inch wheels.

Automatic release

Ensure first that the engine is running and the driver's door is properly closed.

The electric parking brake **releases automatically and progressively when the vehicle moves off**.

With a manual gearbox: fully depress the clutch pedal, engage first gear or reverse; press the accelerator pedal and release the clutch pedal.

With an automatic gearbox: select position **D**, **M** or **R** then press the accelerator pedal.

The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of a message.

! When stationary with the engine running, do not depress the accelerator pedal unnecessarily, you risk releasing the parking brake.

Automatic application

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake **is automatically applied when the ignition is switched off**.

Application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of a message.

! With the engine stalled or in STOP mode of Stop & Start, automatic application does not take place.

i With automatic operation, you can also manually apply or release the parking brake using the control lever.

Manual release

With the ignition on or the engine running, to release the parking brake:

► press the brake pedal,

► briefly push the control lever.

The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal until the doors are closed.

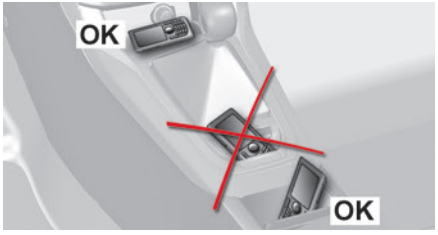
i If you push the control lever without pressing the brake pedal, the parking brake will not be released and a message is displayed.

Manual application

With the vehicle stationary: pull briefly on the control lever.

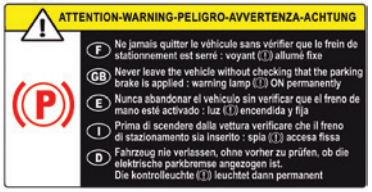
Confirmation of the application instruction is signalled by flashing of the indicator lamp in the control lever.

Application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the braking indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of a message.



! The area in front of the electric parking brake control is not intended for the storage of objects.

Recommendations



i Before leaving the vehicle, check that the parking brake is applied: the indicator lamps in the instrument panel and the control lever must be on fixed.

If the parking brake is not applied, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed on opening the driver's door.

Immobilising the vehicle with the engine running

To immobilise the vehicle with the engine running, briefly pull the control lever.

Application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the braking indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of a message.

Parking the vehicle with the brake released

! In very cold conditions (risk of ice), when being towed, and in a car wash tunnel, it is recommended that the parking brake not be applied.
To immobilise your vehicle, engage a gear or **P** mode (Park) or fit a chock against one of the wheels.

► Switch off the engine.
Application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the indicator lamps on the instrument panel and the control lever.
► Switch on the ignition again, without starting the engine.
► Release the parking brake manually by pushing the control lever while keeping your foot on the brake pedal.
The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of a message.
► Switch off the ignition.

i With the EAT8 automatic gearbox, **P** mode is automatically engaged when the ignition is switched off.
The wheels are blocked.
For more information on the **EAT8 automatic gearbox**, particularly in relation to leaving the vehicle in free-wheeling mode, refer to the corresponding section.

Deactivating automatic operation

In some situations, for example when it is extremely cold or when towing (e.g. caravan, breakdown), it may be necessary to deactivate automatic operation of the system.
► Start the engine.
► Apply the parking brake with the control lever, if it is released.
► Take your foot fully off the brake pedal.
► Push and hold the control lever in the release direction for at least 10 seconds and no more than 15 seconds.
► Release the control lever.
► Press and hold the brake pedal.
► Pull the control lever in the application direction for 2 seconds.
Deactivation of the automatic functions is confirmed by illumination of this indicator lamp on the instrument panel.
► Release the control lever and the brake pedal.
From now on, the parking brake can only be applied and released manually using the control lever.
Repeat this procedure to reactivate automatic operation.

Reactivation of automatic operation is confirmed by the indicator lamp on the instrument panel going off.

Emergency braking

! Emergency braking should only be used in exceptional circumstances.

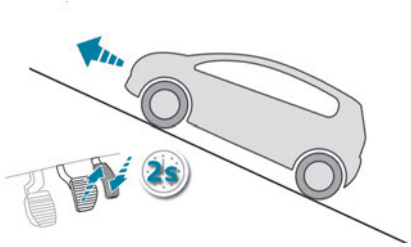
In the event of a fault with the brake pedal or in exceptional circumstances (e.g. driver taken ill, driver under instruction, etc.), a continuous pull on the control lever will brake the vehicle. Braking takes place as long as the control lever is being pulled. Braking stops when the control lever is released.
The ABS and DSC systems stabilise the vehicle during emergency braking.
If the emergency braking malfunctions, the "Parking brake faulty" message will be displayed.

If the ABS and DSC systems malfunction, signalled by the illumination of one or both warning lamps in the instrument panel, then stability of the vehicle is no longer guaranteed. In this event, stability must be assured by the driver by repeating alternate "pull-release" actions on the control lever until the vehicle is immobilised.

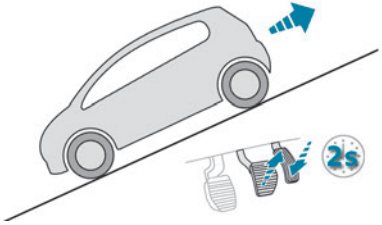
Hill start assist

System which keeps your vehicle immobilised temporarily (approximately 2 seconds) when starting on a gradient, the time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.
It is only active when:
– the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,
– certain slope conditions are met,
– the driver's door is closed.
The hill start assist system cannot be deactivated.

! Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held in the hill start assist phase.
If you need to leave the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually. Then check that the parking brake warning lamp is on continuously (not flashing) on the instrument panel.



Uphill, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal.
With a **manual gearbox**, if you are in first gear or in neutral.
With an **automatic gearbox**, if you are in position **D** or **M**.



Downhill, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal.

Operating fault

If a fault in the system occurs, this warning lamp comes on accompanied by a message. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

5-speed manual gearbox

Engaging reverse gear

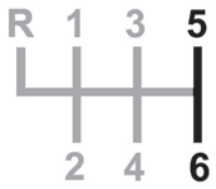
► With the clutch pedal fully down, you must place the gear lever in neutral.
► Move the gear lever to the right, then pull it back.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

i As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:
– always select neutral,
– press the clutch pedal.

6-speed manual gearbox

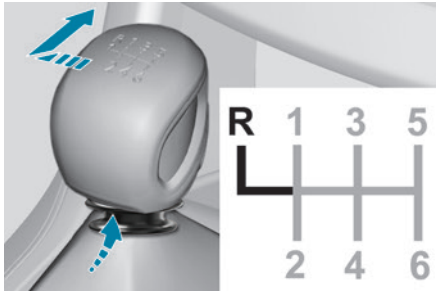
Engaging 5th or 6th gear



► Move the gear lever fully to the right to engage 5th or 6th gear.

! Failure to follow this instruction could cause permanent damage to the gearbox (inadvertent engagement of 3rd or 4th gear).

Engaging reverse gear



► Raise the ring under the knob and move the gear lever to the left then forwards.

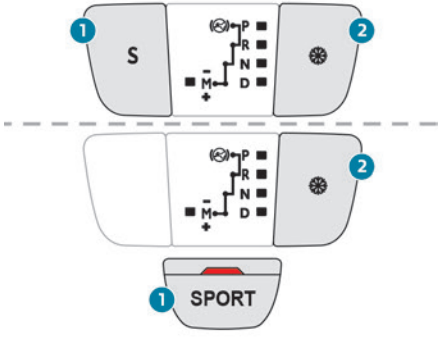
! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

i As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting the engine:
– always select neutral,
– press the clutch pedal.

EAT6 automatic gearbox

6-speed automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of automatic operation or manual gear changing.
Two driving modes are available:
– **Automatic** operation for electronic management of the gears by the gearbox:
– **Manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.

Gear selector module



1. **Sport** programme
2. **Snow** programme
P. Park
– Vehicle immobilised, parking brake applied or released.
– Engine starting.
R. Reverse
– Reversing manoeuvres, vehicle stationary, engine at idle.
N. Neutral
– Vehicle immobilised, parking brake applied.
– Engine starting.
D. Automatic operation

M. +/- Manual operation
► To shift up/down through the gears, push the control backwards/forwards.

Steering mounted controls

(Only for vehicles equipped with the **Driver Sport Pack**.)

Press behind the **right** control to **increase** the gear.
Press behind the **left** control to **decrease** the gear.

> The steering controls do not allow neutral to be selected and reverse gear to be engaged or disengaged.

Information displayed on the instrument panel

When a position is selected in the grate with the gear selector, the corresponding indicator lamp lights up on the instrument panel.

P. Park
R. Reverse
N. Neutral
D. Drive (automatic operation)
S. **Sport** programme
T. **Snow** programme
1...6. Gear engaged during manual operation
-. Instruction not processed in manual operation

Starting the vehicle

► With your foot on the brake pedal, select position **P** or **N**.
► Start the engine.
If the conditions are not met, you will hear an audible signal, accompanied by the display of a message.
► With the engine running, press the brake pedal.
► Release the parking brake, unless it is programmed to automatic mode.
► Select position **R**, **D** or **M**.
► Gradually release the brake pedal.
The vehicle moves off immediately.

> If position **N** is selected inadvertently while driving, allow the engine to return to idle, then select position **D** to accelerate.

> When the engine is running at idle with the brakes released, if position **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves even without the accelerator being pressed.
> Never leave children unattended in the vehicle when the engine is running.
> When carrying out maintenance with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.

Automatic operation

► Select position **D** for **automatic** changing of the six gears.
The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any intervention on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear according to the driving style, the road profile and the load in the vehicle.
For maximum acceleration without touching the selector, press the accelerator fully down (kick-down). The gearbox changes down automatically

or holds the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached.
When braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide effective engine braking.
If you release the accelerator sharply, the gearbox will not shift to a higher gear for safety reasons.

! Never select position **N** while the vehicle is moving.
Never select positions **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is completely stationary.

"Sport" and "Snow" programmes

These two special programmes supplement the automatic operation in specific conditions of use.

"Sport"

S ► Press this button, once the engine has started.
"**S**" appears on the instrument panel.
The gearbox automatically favours a dynamic style of driving.
On versions fitted with the Driver Sport Pack, the "**S**" button is replaced by the "**SPORT**" button.

"Snow"

❄ ► Press this button, once the engine has started.

The gearbox adapts to driving on slippery roads. This programme improves starting and traction when grip is poor.

Driver Sport Pack

This function favours a dynamic style of driving.

S ► Press the "**SPORT**" button, after starting the engine.

"**S**" appears in the instrument panel.
For more information on **Driver Sport Pack**, refer to the corresponding section.

Return to automatic operation

► At any time, press the selected button (**"S** or "T") again to quit the activated programme and return to auto-adaptive mode.

Manual operation

🍀 To limit fuel consumption during an extended standstill with the engine running (for example, in a traffic jam), set the gear selector to **N** and apply the parking brake.

► Selecting position **M** enables sequential shifting between the six gears.
► Push backwards to shift up a gear.
► Push forwards to shift down a gear.
The gearbox only changes gear if the road speed and engine speed permit; apart from this condition, the rules for automatic operation temporarily apply.

M 4 **D** disappears, and the gears engaged appear in succession on the instrument panel.

If the engine speed is too low or too high, the selected gear flashes for a few seconds, then the gearactually activated is displayed.
It is possible to change from position **D** to position **M** at any time.
When the vehicle is stationary or moving very slowly, the gearbox selects gear **M1** automatically.
The **Sport** and **Snow** programmes are inactive in manual operation.

– This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (gear selector between two positions).

Switching the vehicle off

Before switching off the engine, it is possible to engage position **P** or **N** to place the gearbox in neutral.
In both cases, apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle, unless it is programmed to automatic mode.

i If the selector is not in position **P**, when the driver's door is opened or approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off, an audible signal sounds and a message appears.
► Return the gear selector to **P**; the audible signal stops and the message disappears.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp comes on and a message is displayed, when the ignition is switched on.
In this case, the gearbox goes into back-up mode and is locked in 3rd gear. It is possible to feel a significant jolt (without risk for the gearbox) while changing from **P** to **R** and from **N** to **R**.
Do not exceed 62 mph (100 km/h), local speed restrictions permitting.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! There is a risk of damaging the gearbox:
– If the accelerator and brake pedals are pressed simultaneously.
– In the event of a battery failure, forcing the selector from position **P** to another position.

! With an automatic gearbox, never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

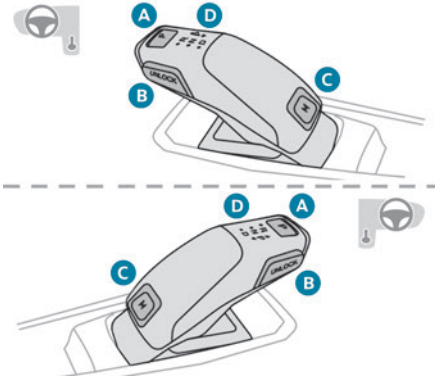
EAT8 automatic gearbox

Automatic 8 speed gearbox with a push selector. It also offers a manual mode with gear changes via control paddles situated behind the steering wheel.

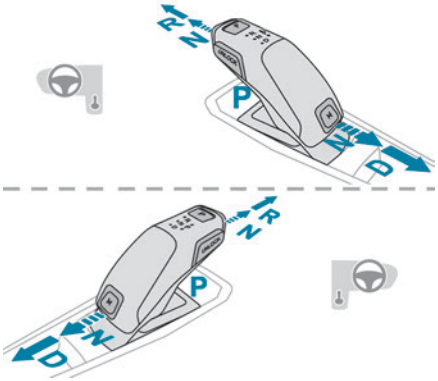
Gearbox selector positions

P. Park
For parking the vehicle: the front wheels are blocked.
R. Reverse gear
N. Neutral
For moving the vehicle with the ignition off, or to allow it to free-wheel.
For more information on **Changing to free-wheeling**, refer to the corresponding section.
D. Driving in automatic mode
The gearbox manages gear changes according to the style of driving, the road profile and the vehicle load.
M. Driving in manual mode
The driver changes gear using the steering-mounted controls.

Push selector



A. Button **P**
To put the gearbox into Park mode.
B. **Unlock** button
To unlock the gearbox and come out of **P** or to change to **R**, with the foot on the brake pedal.
Press and hold this button before pushing the selector.
C. Button **M**
To change from mode **D** to permanent manual mode.
D. Gearbox status indicators **(P, R, N, D)**



► Move the selector by pressing it forwards (**N** or **R**) or rearwards (**N** or **D**) once or twice, passing the point of resistance if necessary.
The push selector returns to its initial position when released.
For example, to change from **P** to **R**, either push forwards twice without passing the point of resistance or push just once, passing the point of resistance:
– In the first case, the gearbox goes from **P** to **N**, then from **N** to **R**.
– In the second case, the gearbox goes directly from **P** to **R**.

Steering-mounted controls

In mode **M** or **D**, the steering-mounted control paddles can be used to change gear manually. They cannot be used to select neutral or to engage or disengage reverse gear.

► Pull the "**+**" or "**-**" paddle towards you and release to shift up or down a gear, respectively.

Information displayed on the instrument panel

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox status is displayed on the instrument panel:
P : Park.
R : Reverse.
N : Neutral.
D1...D8 : Automatic mode.
S : Sport programme ou Driver Sport Pack.
M1...M8 : Manual mode.
- : Instruction not processed in manual mode.
If the driver's door is opened with the ignition on, a message is displayed, prompting you to set the gearbox to mode **P**.

Operation

With the engine running, if it is necessary to press the brake pedal and/or the **Unlock** button in order to change mode, an alert message is displayed in the instrument panel.
Only appropriate attempted changes of mode are accepted.

! With the engine running and the brakes released, if **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves off, even without pressing the accelerator pedal.

! Never press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time - risk of damage to the gearbox!
In the event of a battery failure, you must place the chock supplied with the vehicle tools against one of the wheels to immobilise the vehicle.

Unlocking the gearbox

– From mode **P**:
  ► Fully depress the brake pedal.
  ► Press the **Unlock** button.
  ► While continuing to press the brake pedal and the **Unlock** button, select another mode.
– From neutral **N**, at a speed below 3 mph (5 km/h):
  ► Fully depress the brake pedal.
  ► While continuing to depress the brake pedal, select another mode.

Engaging reverse gear

► Slow down until you come to a stop.
► Depress the brake pedal, then press the **Unlock** button.
► While maintaining the presses, select mode **R**.

Manual mode

Entering the mode:
► With mode **D** initially selected.
► Press button **M**; the green indicator lamp in the button comes on.
Exiting the mode:
► Push forwards once to return to **D**.
or
► Press button **M**; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Switching off the ignition

To switch off the ignition, the vehicle must be stationary.

Changing to free-wheeling

For more information on **Changing to free-wheeling**, refer to the corresponding section.

> ℹ If you open the driver's door while mode **N** is engaged, an audible signal will sound. It will stop when you close the driver's door again.

Special aspects of automatic mode

The gearbox selects the gear that offers optimum performance, taking account of the outside temperature, the road profile, the vehicle load and the driving style.
For maximum acceleration, press the accelerator fully down (kick-down). The gearbox changes down automatically or holds the selected gear until the maximum engine speed is reached.
Steering mounted controls allow the driver to temporarily select a gear, if the vehicle speed and engine speed conditions permit.

Special aspects of manual mode

The gearbox only changes from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed conditions permit.

Starting the vehicle

From mode **P**:
► Fully depress the brake pedal.
► Start the engine.
► Maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, press the **Unlock** button.
► Push once or twice rearwards to select the automatic mode **D**, or forwards to engage reverse **R**.
From neutral **N**:
► Fully depress the brake pedal.
► Start the engine.
► Maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, push rearwards to select the automatic mode **D**, or forwards, while pressing the **Unlock** button to engage reverse **R**.
Then, from **D** or **R**:
► Release the brake pedal.
► Accelerate gradually to automatically release the electric parking brake.
The vehicle moves off immediately.

> ! With an automatic gearbox, never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Stopping the vehicle

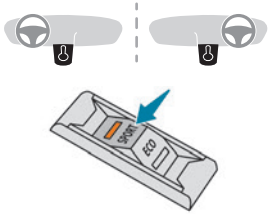
Whatever the state of the gearbox, when the ignition is switched off, mode **P** is engaged automatically and immediately.
However, in mode **N**, mode **P** will be engaged after a delay of 5 seconds (allowing for the process of putting the vehicle into free-wheeling mode).
Check that mode **P** has been engaged and that the electric parking brake was applied automatically; if not, apply it manually.
(P) The corresponding indicator lamps in the selector and the electric parking brake control lever must be on, as well as those in the instrument panel.

SPORT/ECO control

Driver Sport Pack

With the engine running, when the **Driver Sport Pack** is activated, the gearbox delays changing up for a more dynamic driving style.
The programme is automatically deactivated when the ignition is switched off.
Activating the **Driver Sport Pack** is not recommended in the following situations:

– ASR system deactivated
– Low fuel level reached
– Low AdBlue level reached



Pressing this button has no effect when towing a connected trailer.

Pressing the front part of the control activates the **Driver Sport Pack**. The indicator lamp comes on.
Pressing this control again deactivates the function. The indicator lamp goes off.
For more information on the **Driver Sport Pack**, refer to the corresponding section.

Eco mode

Activating this mode reduces fuel consumption by optimising the operation of the heating and air conditioning systems, and on some versions, the pedals, automatic gearbox and gear efficiency indicator.
With petrol engines, "free-wheeling" is used wherever possible to slow the vehicle without using engine braking.

Activation/Deactivation

► To activate or deactivate this mode, press this button.
The indicator lamp is illuminated when the system is activated.

Gearbox malfunction

This warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message.
Visit a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Do not drive faster than 62 mph (100 km/h), keeping to the speed limit.
The gearbox switches to back-up mode: mode **D** is locked in third gear, the steering-mounted control paddles are inoperative, mode **M** is no longer available. You may feel a significant jolt on engaging reverse gear. This will not damage the gearbox.

Selector malfunction

Minor malfunction

This warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
Drive carefully.
Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
In some cases, the selector indicator lamps may no longer come on, but the gearbox state is still displayed on the instrument panel.

Major malfunction

This warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of a message.

You must stop the vehicle.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Driver Sport Pack

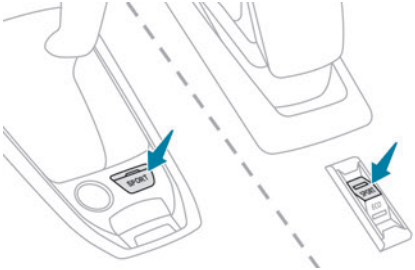
This pack changes:
– the visual ambience, with specific back-lighting in the instrument panel,
– the acoustic ambience of the engine,
– the level of power assistance for the steering,
– the acceleration,
– the management of gear changes with the automatic gearbox.

This function is only available when Park Assist is not selected and when the automatic gearbox's snow mode is not selected.
If Park Assist is activated, this automatically deactivates the function.

With an automatic gearbox, gear changes are faster.

Activation of Driver Sport Pack acts like the **Sport** programme on the operation of the gearbox.

Activation



► Press and hold the **Sport** button until the back-lighting of the instrument panel changes. The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

If the LED flashes, activation is not possible (for example if Park Assist or snow mode is selected) and so the back-lighting returns to its normal mode.
If the LED continues to flash, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Display of the vehicle's dynamic parameters

► To display this information, select "Personal" display on the touch screen, then select the screen corresponding to the dynamic mode.

This telemetry information (longitudinal and lateral acceleration, power produced, turbocharger pressure, etc.) is given as an indication only.

Gear efficiency indicator

(Depending on engine.)
This system reduces fuel consumption by recommending the most appropriate gear.

Operation

Depending on driving conditions and your vehicle's equipment, the system may advise you to skip one or more gears.
Gear shift recommendations should not be considered compulsory. The road layout, traffic density and safety remain decisive factors when choosing the best gear. The driver therefore remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the guidance issued by the system.
This function cannot be deactivated.

With an automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual operation.

The information appears on the instrument panel, in the form of an arrow and the recommended gear.

The system adapts its gear shift recommendation according to the driving conditions (slope, load, etc.) and the driver's inputs (power, acceleration, braking, etc.).
The system never suggests:
– engaging first gear,
– engaging reverse gear.

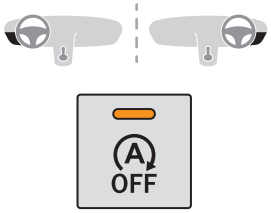
Stop & Start

The Stop & Start function puts the engine temporarily into standby - STOP mode - during phases when the vehicle is stopped (red lights, queues, etc.). The engine restarts automatically - START mode - as soon as the driver wishes to move off again.
Primarily designed for urban use, the function is intended to reduce fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.
The function does not affect the functionalities of the vehicle, in particular the braking.

Deactivation/Reactivation

The function is **activated** by default when the ignition is switched on.
To deactivate/reactivate the function:

With the dashboard button



► Press the button.
A message in the instrument panel confirms the change of status.
When the function is deactivated, the orange indicator lamp is lit; if the engine was in standby, it restarts immediately.

With the touch screen button

It is set via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.
A message on the instrument panel confirms the change of status.
When the function is deactivated, if the engine was in standby, it restarts immediately.

Associated indicator lamp

Function activated.

Opening the bonnet
Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury caused by the engine restarting automatically.

Driving on flooded roads
Before entering into a flooded area, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system.
For more information on **Driving recommendations**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

Operation

Main conditions for operation

– The driver's door must be closed.
– The driver's seat belt must be fastened.
– The state of charge of the battery must be sufficient.
– The temperature of the engine must be within its nominal operating range.
– The outside temperature must be between 0°C and 35°C.

Putting the engine into standby (STOP mode)

The engine automatically enters standby mode as soon as the driver indicates their intention to stop.

– **With a manual gearbox**, at speeds below 2 mph (3 km/h) (with BlueHDi 130 S&S engine) or with the vehicle stationary (other engines), when you place the gear lever into neutral and release the clutch pedal.
– **With an automatic gearbox**, with the vehicle stationary, when you depress the brake pedal or place the gear selector in position **N**.

Time counter

A time counter adds up the time spent in standby during the journey. It is reset to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Special cases:

The engine will not go into standby if all of the conditions for operation are not met and in the following cases.
– Steep slope (ascending or descending).
– Vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start (with the key or the "**START/STOP**"button).
– Electric parking brake applied or being applied.
– Needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.
– Demisting active.
– Braking assistance being used.

In these cases, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

After the engine has restarted, STOP mode may not be available until the

vehicle has reached a speed of 5 mph (8 km/h).

During parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear or turning the steering wheel.

Engine restarting (START mode)

The engine automatically restarts as soon as the driver indicates the intention of moving off again.

► **With a manual gearbox**: with the clutch pedal fully depressed.

► **With an automatic gearbox**:

- With the selector in position **D** or **M**: with the brake pedal released.
- With the selector in position **N** and the brake pedal released: with the selector at **D** or **M**.
- With the selector in position **P** and the brake pedal depressed: with the selector at **R**, **N**, **D** or **M**.
- Reverse gear engaged.

Special cases

The engine will restart automatically if all conditions for operation are met again and in the following cases.

– The electric parking brake is being applied.
– Vehicle speed exceeds 2 mph (3 km/h).
– Some specific conditions (braking assistance, air conditioning setting, etc.).

In these cases, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

Malfunctions

Depending on the vehicle's equipment:

In the event of a system malfunction, this warning lamp flashes on the instrument panel.

The warning lamp in this button flashes and a message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.

Have the vehicle checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

The vehicle stalls in STOP mode

All of the instrument panel warning lamps come on if there is a fault.

Depending on version, a warning message may also be displayed, prompting you to place the gear selector in position **N** and depress the brake pedal.

► Switch off the ignition then start the engine again with the key or the "**START/STOP**" button.

The Stop & Start system requires a 12 V battery of specific technology and specification.

All work concerning the battery must be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Under-inflation detection

This system automatically checks the tyre pressures while driving.

It compares the information given by the wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which must be reinitialised every time the tyre pressures are adjusted or a wheel changed**.

The system triggers an alert as soon as it detects a drop in the inflation pressure of one or more tyres.

Under-inflation detection does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

This system does not avoid the need to regularly check the tyre pressures (including the spare wheel), especially before a long journey.

Driving with under-inflated tyres, particularly in adverse conditions (heavy load, high speed, long journey):

– worsens road-holding.
– lengthens braking distances.
– causes premature wear of the tyres.
– increases energy consumption.

The inflation pressures defined for the vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label.

For more information on the **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

Checking tyre pressures
This check should be done when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speeds).
Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.

Snow chains
The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

Under-inflation alert

This is signalled by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and, depending on equipment, the display of a message.
► Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and avoid sudden braking.
► Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

The loss of pressure detected does not always cause visible bulging of the tyre.
Do not rely on just a visual check.

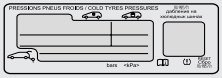
► Using a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of the four tyres when cold.
► If it is not possible to make this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.
► In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment).

The alert is kept active until the system is reinitialised.

Reinitialisation

The system must be reinitialised after any adjustment to the pressure of one or more tyres, and after changing one or more wheels.

Before reinitialising the system, make sure that the pressures of the four tyres are correct for the conditions of use of the vehicle and conform to the values written on the tyre pressure label.
Check the pressures of the four tyres before performing the reinitialisation.
The system does not advise if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.



With the vehicle stationary, the system is reinitialised via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.
The reinitialisation is confirmed by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Malfunction

These warning lamps come on in the event of a malfunction.
A message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.
In this case, the tyre under-inflation monitoring function is no longer performed.
Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Driving and manoeuvring aids - General recommendations

Driving and manoeuvring aids cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
The driver must comply with the Highway Code, must remain in control of the vehicle in all circumstances and must be able to retake control of it at all times. The driver must adapt the speed to climactic conditions, traffic and the state of the road.
It is the driver's responsibility to constantly check the traffic, to assess the relative distances and speeds of other vehicles and to anticipate their movements before indicating and changing lane.
The systems cannot exceed the limits of the laws of physics.

Driving aids
You should hold the steering wheel with both hands, always use the interior and exterior rear view mirrors, always keep the feet close to the pedals and take a break every two hours.

Manoeuvring aids
The driver must always check the surroundings of the vehicle before and during the whole manoeuvre, in particular using the mirrors.

Radar
The operation of the radar as well as the associated functions may be impaired through the accumulation of dirt (mud, frost, etc.), in certain difficult weather conditions (very heavy rain, snow) or if the bumper is damaged.
If the front bumper is to be repainted, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop; certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radar.

Driving aids camera
This camera and its associated functions may be impaired or not work if the windscreen area in front of the camera is dirty, misty, frosty, covered with snow, damaged or masked by a sticker.
On versions with camera alone, this message indicates to you that the camera is obstructed: "**Driving aids camera: visibility limited, see user guide**".
In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.
Poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall), dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light) can also impair detection performance.
In the event of a windscreen replacement, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to recalibrate the camera; otherwise, the operation of the associated driving aids may be disrupted.

Other cameras
The images from the camera(s) displayed on the touch screen or on the instrument panel may be distorted by the relief.
In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.
Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.

Sensors
The operation of the sensors as well as the associated functions may be disturbed by sound interference such as that emitted by noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. lorries, pneumatic drills), by the accumulation of snow or dead leaves on the road or in the event of damaged bumpers and mirrors.
When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.
A front or rear impact to the vehicle can upset the sensors' settings, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be distorted.
The sensors do not systematically detect obstacles that are too low (pavements, studs) or too thin (trees, posts, wire fences).
Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or may no longer be detected during the manoeuvre.
Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.

Maintenance
Clean the bumpers and door mirrors and the field of vision of the cameras regularly.
When washing your vehicle at high pressure, direct the spray from at least 30 cm away from the radar, sensors and cameras.

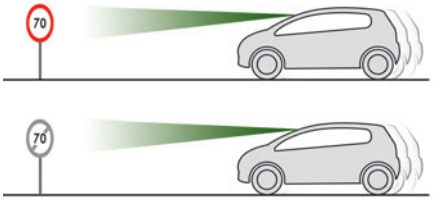
Mats
The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter or cruise control.
To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

► ensure that the mat is secured correctly,
► never fit one mat on top of another.

Units of speed
Ensure that the units of speed displayed on the instrument panel (mph or km/h) are those for the country you are driving in.
If this is not the case, when the vehicle is stationary, set the display to the required units of speed so that it complies with what is authorised locally.
In case of doubt, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



This system displays the maximum authorised speed in the instrument panel, according to the speed limits in the country in which you are driving, using:

– Speed limit signs detected by the camera.
– Speed limit details from the navigation system mapping.

You should update your navigation mapping regularly in order to receive accurate speed limit information from the system.

The units for the speed limit (mph or km/h) depend on the country you are driving in.
This should be taken into account so that you observe the speed limit.
For the system to operate correctly when you change country, the units for speed in the instrument panel must be those for the country you are driving in.

The automatic reading of road signs is a driving aid system and does not always display speed limits correctly.
The speed limit signs present on the road always take priority over the display by the system.
The system is designed to detect signs that conform to the Vienna Convention on road signs.

Specific speed limits, such as those for heavy goods vehicles, are not displayed.
The display of the speed limit in the instrument panel is updated as you pass a speed limit sign intended for cars (light vehicles).

Activation / Deactivation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.

It is set via the **Driving** / **Vehicle** touch screen menu.

Information displayed on the instrument panel

1. Detected speed limit indication
   or
2. End of speed limit indication

The system is active but is not detecting speed limit information.

On detecting speed limit information, the system displays the value.

For a suggested maximum speed, the first time that the vehicle exceeds it **by more than 3 mph (5 km/h)** (e.g. 59 mph (95 km/h)), the speed is displayed and flashes for 10 seconds (depending on version).

Operating limits

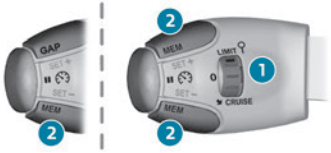
The system does not take account of reduced speed limits, especially those imposed in the following cases:
– Poor weather (rain, snow).
– Atmospheric pollution.
– Towing.
– Driving with a space-saver type spare wheel or snow chains fitted.
– Tyre repaired using the temporary puncture repair kit.
– Young drivers.
The system may not display the speed limit if it does not detect a speed limit sign within a preset period and in the following situations:
– Road signs that are obstructed, non-standard, damaged or bent.
– Obsolete or incorrect maps.

Recommendation

In addition to **Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation**, the driver can select the speed displayed as a speed setting for the speed limiter or cruise control using the speed limiter or cruise control 'store' button.

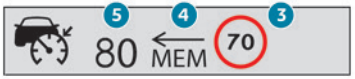
> i For more information on the **Speed limiter**, **Cruise control** or **Adaptive cruise control**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Steering mounted controls



1. Speed limiter/cruise control mode selection
2. Memorise the speed setting

Information displayed on the instrument panel



3. Speed limit indication
4. Speed memorisation prompt
5. Current speed setting

Storing the speed setting

► Switch on the speed limiter/cruise control.
The speed limiter/cruise control information is displayed.
Upon detecting a sign suggesting a new speed setting, the system displays the value and "**MEM**" flashes for a few seconds, prompting you to save it as a new speed setting.

> i If there is a difference of less than 6 mph (9 km/h) between the speed setting and the speed displayed by the Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation, the "**MEM**" symbol is not displayed.

► Press button **2once** to save the suggested speed value.
A message is displayed, confirming the request.

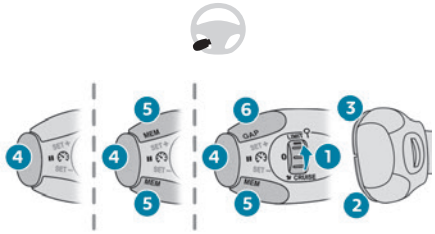
► Press button **2again** to confirm and save the new speed setting.
The display then reverts to its previous state.

Speed limiter

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

This system prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver (speed setting).
The speed limiter is **switched on** manually.
The minimum speed setting is 19 mph (30 km/h).
The speed setting remains in the system memory when the ignition is switched off.

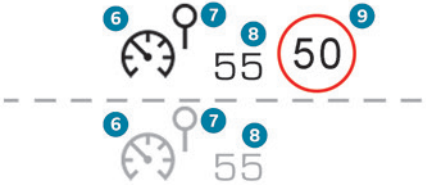
Steering-mounted control



1. ON (**LIMIT** position)/OFF (position **0**)
2. Reduce the speed setting
3. Increase the speed setting
4. Pause/resume speed limiter with the speed setting previously stored
5. Depending on version:
   Display the speed thresholds saved using the Memorising speeds function
   or
   Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation (**MEM** display)
6. Display and adjustment of the programmed inter-vehicle distance

For more information on **Memorising speeds** or the **Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Information displayed on the instrument panel



6. Speed limiter on/pause status indication
7. Speed limiter mode selection indication
8. Programmed speed value
9. Speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation system (depending on version)

Switching on/pausing

► Turn thumbwheel **1** to the "**LIMIT**" position to select the speed limiter; the function is paused.
► If you are satisfied with the limit speed setting (most recent speed setting programmed in the system), press button **4** to switch the speed limiter on.
► Pressing button **4** again temporarily pauses the function.

> i An audible warning will sound if the vehicle's speed exceeds the speed setting for an extended period.

Adjusting the limit speed setting

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.
To modify the limit speed setting based on the vehicle's current speed:
► Briefly press button **2** or **3** to change the value in steps of + or - 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
► Press and hold button **2** or **3** to change the value in steps of + or - 5 mph (8 km/h).
To modify the limit speed setting using memorised speeds and from the touch screen:

► press button **5** to display the memorised speed settings,
► press the button for the desired speed setting.
The selection screen closes after a few moments.
This setting becomes the new limit speed.
To modify the cruise speed setting based on the speed suggested by the Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation, as shown on the instrument panel:
► Press button **5** once; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request.
► Press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.
The speed is immediately shown on the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

Temporarily exceeding the speed setting

► Press the accelerator pedal down fully.
The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the displayed speed setting flashes.
► Release the accelerator pedal to return to below the programmed speed.
When the limit speed is exceeded but this is not due to action by the driver (in case of a steep slope, for example), an audible signal triggers immediately.

! On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the speed setting.
Brake if necessary to control the speed of your vehicle.

Once the speed of the vehicle returns to the programmed setting, the speed limiter functions again: the display of the speed setting becomes fixed again.

Switching off

► Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the "**0**" position: the display of information on the speed limiter disappears.

Malfunction

Dashes are displayed (flashing, initially, then fixed) in the event of a speed limiter malfunction.
Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Cruise control - particular recommendations

! For the safety of everyone, only use the cruise control where the driving conditions allow running at a constant speed and keeping an adequate safety distance.
Remain vigilant when the cruise control is activated. If you hold one of the speed setting modification buttons, a very rapid change in the speed of your vehicle may occur.
When **descending a steep hill**, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the set speed. Brake if necessary to control the speed of your vehicle.
On **steep climbs** or when towing, the set speed may not be reached or maintained.

i **Exceeding the programmed speed setting**
The speed setting can be exceeded **temporarily** by pressing the accelerator pedal firmly beyond the point of resistance (the programmed speed flashes).
To return to the speed setting, release the accelerator pedal (when this speed is reached again, the display of the speed stops flashing).

! **Operating limits**
Never use the system in the following situations:
– In an urban area with the risk of pedestrians crossing the road.
– In heavy traffic (except versions with the Stop & Go function).

– On winding or steep roads.
– On slippery or flooded roads.
– In poor weather conditions.
– Driving on a speed circuit.
– Driving on a rolling road.
– When using snow chains, non-slip covers or studded tyres.

Cruise control

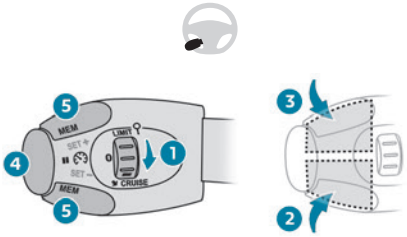
Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids** and to **Cruise control - particular recommendations**.

This system automatically keeps the vehicle's speed at the cruise value programmed by the driver (speed setting), without using the accelerator pedal.
Cruise control is **switched on** manually.
It requires a minimum vehicle speed of 19 mph (30 km/h).
With a manual gearbox, third gear or higher must be engaged.
With an automatic gearbox, mode **D** or second gear or higher in mode **M** must be engaged.

! Depending on engine, cruise control is **paused** manually (button **4**) or by pressing the brake or clutch pedal or if the electronic stability control (ESC) system is triggered for safety reasons.
Depending on engine, with a manual gearbox and Stop & Start, cruise control **remains active** after changing gear.

i Switching off the ignition cancels any speed setting.

Steering mounted control



1. ON (**CRUISE** position) / OFF (position **0**)
2. Activate cruise control at the current speed / decrease speed setting
3. Activate cruise control at the current speed / increase speed setting
4. Pause / resume cruise control with the speed setting previously saved
5. Depending on version:
   Display the speed thresholds saved using the Memorising speeds function
   or
   Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation (**MEM** display)

For more information on **Memorising speeds** or the **Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Information displayed on the instrument panel

6. Cruise control pause/resume
7. Cruise control mode selection
8. Speed setting value
9. Speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation system (depending on version)

Switching on/pausing

► Turn thumbwheel **1** to the "**CRUISE**" position to select cruise control mode; the function is paused.
► Press button **2** or **3** to activate cruise control and save a speed setting when the vehicle has reached the desired speed; the vehicle's current speed is saved as the speed setting.
► Release the accelerator pedal.
► Pressing button **4** temporarily pauses the function.
► Pressing button **4** again restores operation of the cruise control (ON).

Modifying the cruise speed setting

Cruise control must be active.
To modify the cruise speed setting, based on the current speed of the vehicle:
► Briefly press button **2** or **3** to change the value in steps of + or - 1 mph (km/h).
► Press and hold button **2** or **3** to change the value in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h).

! Pressing and holding button **2** or **3** results in a rapid change in the speed of the vehicle.

! As a precaution, we recommend setting a cruise speed fairly close to the current speed of your vehicle, to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

To modify the cruise speed setting using memorised speed settings and from the touch screen:
► press button **5** to display the memorised speed settings,
► press the button for the desired speed setting.
The selection screen closes after a few moments.
This setting becomes the new cruise speed.
To modify the cruise speed setting using the speed suggested by the Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation shown on the instrument panel:
► Press button **5** once; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request.
► Press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.
The speed is immediately shown on the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

Temporarily exceeding the programmed speed

If needed (for overtaking, etc.) it is possible to exceed the programmed speed by pressing the accelerator pedal.
The cruise control is temporarily overridden and the programmed speed setting flashes.
To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal.
Once the vehicle has returned to the programmed speed, the cruise control takes over again: the display of the programmed speed setting becomes steady again.

! When descending a steep hill, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.
You may have to brake to control the speed of your vehicle. In this case, the cruise control is automatically paused.
To activate the system again, with the speed of the vehicle above 25 mph (40 km/h), press button **4**.

Switching off

► Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the "**0**" position: the cruise control information disappears from the screen.

Malfunction

Dashes are displayed (flashing, initially, then fixed) in the event of a cruise control system malfunction.
Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

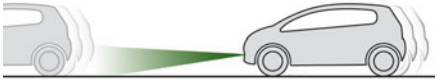
Adaptive Cruise Control

! Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids** and to **Cruise control - particular recommendations**.

This system **automatically** maintains the speed of your vehicle at a value which you set (speed setting), while keeping a safe distance from the vehicle in front (target vehicle), and which has been set beforehand by the driver. The system automatically manages the acceleration and deceleration of the vehicle.

With the **Stop function** (with the EAT8 automatic gearbox), the system manages braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop.

! The brake lamps come on if the vehicle is slowed down by the system.
It can be dangerous to drive if the brake lamps are not in perfect working order.



To do this, it uses a radar fitted in the front bumper.

! Primarily designed for driving on main roads and motorways, this system only works with moving vehicles driving in the same direction as your vehicle.

i If the driver operates a direction indicator to overtake a slower vehicle, the cruise control allows the vehicle to temporarily approach the vehicle in front to assist the overtaking manoeuvre, without ever exceeding the speed setting.

! Some vehicles present on the road may not be properly detected or may be misinterpreted by the camera and/or radar (e.g. a lorry), which may lead to a poor assessment of distances and lead to the vehicle accelerating or braking inappropriately.

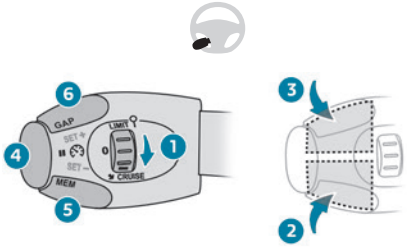
Operating principle

The system automatically adapts the speed of your vehicle to that of the vehicle in front, to maintain a constant distance.
If the vehicle in front is driving more slowly, the system slows, or even stops your vehicle completely (with the EAT8 automatic gearbox), using engine braking and the braking system.
If the vehicle in front accelerates or changes lane, the cruise control progressively accelerates your vehicle to return to the programmed speed.

i The brake lamps illuminate as soon as the braking system is activated to decelerate the vehicle.

! This system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits and safety distances, nor the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
The driver must remain in control of their vehicle at all times by keeping both hands on the steering wheel and keeping their feet near the brake and accelerator pedals.

Steering-mounted controls



1. ON (**CRUISE** position)/OFF (position **0**)
2. Activation of cruise control at the current speed/decrease speed setting
3. Activation of cruise control at the current speed/increase speed setting
4. Pause/resume cruise control with the speed setting previously saved
5. Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation (**MEM** display)
6. Display and adjustment of the distance setting to the vehicle in front

Switching on

► With the engine running, turn the thumbwheel **1** to the "**CRUISE**" position. The system is paused (grey display).
With a manual gearbox, vehicle speed must be between 19 and 112 mph (30 and 180 km/h).
With an automatic gearbox, vehicle speed must be between 0 and 112 mph (0 and 180 km/h).

Mode **D** or **M** must be selected.
► With the vehicle moving, press one of the buttons **2** or **3**: the current speed of your vehicle becomes the cruise speed setting.
– the current speed of your vehicle, if it is over 19 mph (30 km/h),
– 19 mph (30 km/h), if it is below 19 mph (30 km/h).

Saving your settings
Switching off the ignition cancels any speed setting value chosen by the driver.
The inter-vehicle distance is set at "**Normal**" (2 dashes) by default. Otherwise, the last value selected will be used when the system is switched on.

Pause

The cruise control can be **paused** manually:
– either by action by the driver:
- On the button **4** (Pause).
- On the brake pedal.
- On the electric parking brake control.
- On the clutch pedal, by pressing for approximately 10 seconds or more.
- When changing from mode **D** to **N** with an automatic gearbox.

– or automatically:
- If the ESC system is activated, for safety reasons.
- When the speed of the vehicle goes below 19 mph (30 km/h) (1,100 rpm) with a manual gearbox.

! When cruise control is paused, it can only be restarted when all the safety conditions are satisfied once again. The message "Activation not possible, conditions unsuitable" is displayed until the system can be restarted.

Reactivating the function

With a manual gearbox
To reactivate the function, the driver must accelerate and reach at least 19 mph (30 km/h), then press one of the buttons **2**, **3** or **4**.

With EAT8 automatic gearbox
Following braking of the vehicle bringing it to a complete stop, the system holds the vehicle stationary; the cruise control is paused.
The driver must press the accelerator pedal to move off, then reactivate the function when above 19 mph (30 km/h) by pressing one of the buttons **2**, **3** or **4**.
If the driver takes no action after becoming stationary, the electric parking brake is applied automatically after a while (approximately 5 minutes).

! As a safety measure, wait until the current speed approaches the speed setting before reactivating the function by pressing button **4**.

Modification of the speed setting

With the engine running and cruise control on (green), you can modify the speed setting.

Modification using the current speed

► By successive short presses on button **2** or **3**, the setting is raised or lowered in steps of 1 mph (km/h).
► By pressing and holding button **2** or **3**, the setting is raised or lowered in steps of 5 mph (km/h).

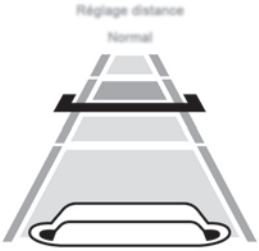
! Take care: pressing and holding button **2** or **3** for an extended period of time will result in a rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

Modification using the speed limit sign recognition system

► The suggested speed is displayed on the instrument panel.
► Press button **5**; a message is displayed to confirm the request to save the suggested speed.
► Press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.
This value is then immediately shown as the new speed setting on the instrument panel.
For more information on the **Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation**, refer to the corresponding section.

! As a precaution, it is recommended that you select a cruise speed close to the current speed of your vehicle, so as to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

Modification of the inter-vehicle distance setting



Three threshold settings are available for the inter-vehicle distance:
– **"Distant"** (3 dashes),
– **"Normal"** (2 dashes),
– **"Close"** (1 dash).
With the engine running and with the thumbwheel at the **"CRUISE"** position:
► Press button **6** to display the selection screen for the inter-vehicle distance setting.
► Pressing button **6** repeatedly will cycle through the predefined settings.
The selection screen closes after a few seconds. The change then takes effect.

This setting remains memorised, whatever the state of the system and even when the ignition is switched off.

i The selection also applies to the stopping distance (with EAT6 and EAT8 automatic gearbox).

Exceeding the programmed setting

It is possible to exceed the speed setting temporarily by depressing the accelerator pedal. **The cruise control no longer manages the braking system during this period.**
Simply release the accelerator pedal to return to the programmed speed.
If the programmed speed setting is exceeded, the display of the speed setting disappears and a message "Cruise control suspended" is displayed until the accelerator pedal is released.

Messages and alerts

To benefit from the following information on the instrument panel, select the **DRIVING** or **Driving aids** display mode.

i The display of these messages or alerts is not sequential.

"Cruise control paused" or "Cruise control suspended" following a brief acceleration by the driver.

"Cruise control active", no vehicle detected.

"Cruise control paused", vehicle detected.

"Cruise control active", vehicle detected.

"Take back control" (orange).

► Brake or accelerate, depending on the context.

"Take back control" (red).

► **Take back control of the vehicle immediately**: the system cannot manage the current driving situation.

"Activation not possible, conditions unsuitable". The system refuses to activate cruise control, as the necessary conditions are not fulfilled.

Stop function

"Cruise control paused" (for a few seconds).

The system has brought the vehicle to a complete stop and is keeping it immobilised: cruise control is paused.
The driver must accelerate to move off again, then reactivate cruise control.

Operating limits

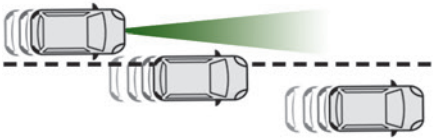
The system cannot exceed the limits of the laws of physics.

Certain situations cannot be managed by the system and require the driver to take back control of the vehicle.

Cases of non-detection by the radar:

– Pedestrians, some cyclists, animals.

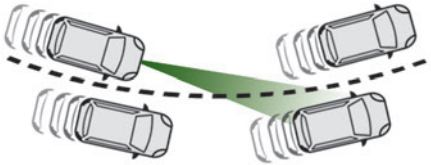
– Stationary vehicles (traffic jam, breakdown, etc.).



– Vehicles crossing your lane.

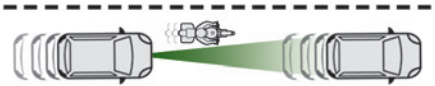
– Vehicles driving in the opposite direction.

Situations in which the driver must pause the cruise control system:



– Vehicles in a tight bend.

– When approaching a roundabout.

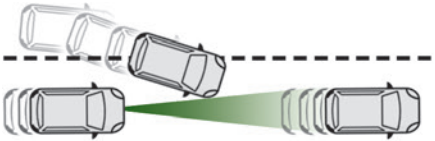


– When following a narrow vehicle.

Reactivate cruise control when conditions permit.

Situations in which the driver is prompted to immediately resume control:

– Excessively sharp deceleration by the vehicle in front of you.



– When a vehicle cuts in sharply between your vehicle and the one in front.

The system must not be activated in the following situations:

– Use of the "space-saver" type spare wheel (depending on version).

– Towing.

– Following an impact on the front bumper.

! Be particularly careful:

– When motorcycles are present and when there are vehicles staggered across the traffic lane.

– When you enter a tunnel or cross a bridge.

! Cruise control operates by day and night, in fog or moderate rainfall.

However, it is strongly recommended that you always keep a safe distance from the vehicles in front of you according to the traffic conditions, weather conditions and the state of the road surface.

Use the cruise control only where the driving conditions allow running at a constant speed and keeping an adequate safety distance.

Do not activate the cruise control in urban areas where pedestrians are likely to cross the road, in heavy traffic (except for versions with EAT8 gearbox), on winding or steep roads, on slippery or flooded roads, when there is snowfall, if the front bumper is damaged or when the brake lamps have failed.

In certain circumstances, it may not be possible for the speed setting to be maintained or even reached: loaded vehicle, ascending a steep hill, etc.

! The system is not intended for the following situations:

– if the front end of the vehicle has been modified (addition of long-range headlamps, painting of the front bumper),

– driving on a racing circuit,

– running on a rolling road,

– use of snow chains, non-slip covers or studded tyres.

The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with the operation of the cruise control.

To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

– ensure that the mat is secured correctly,

– never put one mat on top of another.

! The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:
– driving on a winding road,
– poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, falling snow, heavy rain, thick fog, etc.),
– dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light, etc.),
– radar obstructed (mud, frost, snow, condensation, etc.).
In these situations, detection performance may be reduced.

Malfunction

In the event of a cruise control malfunction, dashes are displayed instead of the cruise control speed setting.

This warning lamp comes on, accompanied by a warning message and an audible signal, to indicate a system malfunction.
Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i The adaptive cruise control deactivates automatically if the use of a “space-saver” type spare wheel is detected or in the event of a malfunction of the lateral brake lamps or trailer brake lamps (for approved trailers).

Active Safety Brake with Distance Alert and Intelligent emergency braking assistance

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

This system:
– warns the driver that their vehicle is at risk of collision with the vehicle in front.
– reduces the vehicle's speed to avoid a collision or limit its severity.
This system is comprised of three functions:
– Distance Alert.
– Intelligent emergency braking assistance.
– Active Safety Brake (automatic emergency braking).

The vehicle has a multifunction camera located at the top of the windscreen and, depending on version, a radar located in the front bumper.

! This system does not avoid the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
This system is designed to assist the driver and improve road safety.
It is the driver's responsibility to continuously monitor traffic conditions in accordance with applicable driving regulations.

i As soon as the system detects a potential obstacle, it prepares the braking circuit in case automatic braking is needed. This may cause a slight noise and a slight sensation of deceleration.

Deactivation / Activation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.

Deactivation of the system is signalled by the illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message.

Operating conditions and limits

Vehicle moving forward.
ESC system in working order.
DSC system activated.
Seat belts fastened for all passengers.
Stabilised speed on roads with few bends.
In the following cases, deactivating the system via the vehicle's configuration menu is advised:
– Towing a trailer.
– Carrying long objects on roof bars or roof rack.
– Vehicle with snow chains fitted.
– Before using an automatic car wash, with the engine running.
– Before placing the vehicle on a rolling road in a workshop.
– Towed vehicle, engine running.
– If the brake lamps are not working.
– Damaged front bumper.
– Following an impact to the windscreen close to the detection camera.

i The system is automatically deactivated when the use of a "space-saver" type spare wheel is detected, or if a fault with the lateral brake lamps is detected.

! It can be dangerous to drive if the brake lamps are not in perfect working order.

! It is possible that warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified.
The driver must always stay in control of the vehicle and be prepared to react at any time to avoid an accident.

! After an impact, the function automatically stops operating. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Distance Alert

This function warns the driver that their vehicle is at risk of a collision with the vehicle in front or with a pedestrian present in their traffic lane.

Modifying the alert trigger threshold

This trigger threshold determines the sensitivity with which the function warns of the risk of collision.
► Select one of the three pre-defined thresholds:
– "**Distant**".
– "**Normal**".
– "**Close**".
The last threshold selected is memorised when the ignition is switched off.

Operation

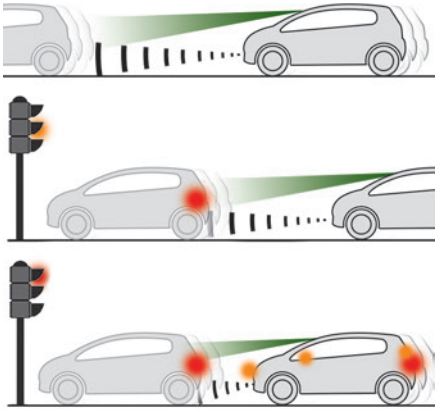
Depending on the degree of risk of collision detected by the system and the alert trigger threshold chosen by the driver, several different levels of alert may be triggered and displayed in the instrument panel.
The system takes account of the vehicle dynamics, the speed of your vehicle and the one in front, the environmental conditions and the operation of the vehicle (actions on the pedals, steering wheel, etc.) to trigger the alert at the most relevant moment.
Level 1 (orange): visual alert only, warning that the vehicle in front is very close.
The message "**Vehicle close**" is displayed.
Level 2 (red): visual and audible alert, warning that a collision is imminent.
The message "**Brake!**" is displayed.

i Where the speed of your vehicle is too high approaching another vehicle, the first level of alert may not be displayed: the level 2 alert may be displayed directly.
Important: the level 1 alert is not displayed when there is a stationary obstacle or when the "**Near**" trigger threshold has been selected.

Intelligent emergency braking assistance

If the driver brakes, but not sufficiently to avoid a collision, this system will supplement the braking, within the limits of the laws of physics.
This assistance will only be provided if the driver presses the brake pedal.

Active Safety Brake



This function, also called automatic emergency braking, intervenes following the alerts if the driver does not react quickly enough and does not operate the vehicle's brakes.
It aims to reduce the speed of impact or avoid a collision where the driver fails to react.

Operation

The system operates subject to the following conditions:
– The vehicle's speed does not exceed 37 mph (60 km/h) when a pedestrian is detected.
– The vehicle's speed does not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) when a stationary vehicle is detected.
– The vehicle's speed is between 6 mph and 53 mph (10 km/h and 85 km/h) (versions with camera only) or 87 mph (140 km/h) (versions with camera and radar) when a moving vehicle is detected.

This warning lamp flashes (for approximately 10 seconds) as soon as the function applies the vehicle's brakes.
With an automatic gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking bringing the vehicle to a complete stop, keep the brake pedal pressed down to prevent the vehicle from moving off again.
With a manual gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking bringing the vehicle to a complete stop, the engine may stall.

The driver can maintain control of the vehicle at any time by firmly turning the steering wheel and/or firmly depressing the accelerator pedal.

The brake pedal may vibrate slightly while the function is operating.
If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, automatic braking is maintained for 1 to 2 seconds.

Malfunction

A fault in the system is signalled by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

These warning lamps come on if the driver's seat belt and/or front passenger seat belt (depending on version) are not fastened.

Distraction detection

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.
Take a break if you are feeling tired or at least every 2 hours.
Depending on version, the function consists of either the "Driver Attention Alert" system alone or combined with the "Driver Attention Alert by camera" system.

These systems are in no way designed to keep the driver awake or to prevent the driver from falling asleep at the wheel.
It is the driver's responsibility to stop if feeling tired.

Activation / Deactivation

It is set via the **Driving** / **Vehicle** touch screen menu.
The state of the system stays in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

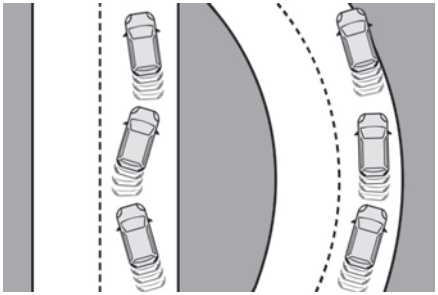
Driver Attention Alert

The system triggers an alert as soon as it detects that the driver has not taken a break after two hours of driving at a speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).
This alert is issued via the display of a message encouraging the driver to take a break, accompanied by an audible signal.
If the driver does not follow this advice, the alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped.
The system resets itself if one of the following conditions is met:
– With the engine running, the vehicle has been stationary for more than 15 minutes.
– The ignition has been switched off for a few minutes.
– The driver's seat belt is unfastened and their door is opened.

As soon as the speed of the vehicle drops below 40 mph (65 km/h), the system goes into standby.
Driving time starts being counted again once the speed reaches above 40 mph (65 km/h).

Driver Attention Alert by camera

Depending on version, the "Driver Attention Alert" may be combined with the "Driver Attention Alert by camera".



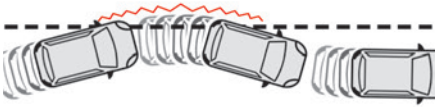
Using a camera placed at the top of the windscreen, the system assesses the driver's level of vigilance, fatigue or distraction by identifying variations in trajectory compared to the lane markings.
This system is particularly suited to fast roads (speed higher than 40 mph (65 km/h)).
At a first-level alert, the driver is warned by the "**Take care!**" message, accompanied by an audible signal.
After three first-level alerts, the system triggers a further alert with the message "**Dangerous driving: take a break**", accompanied by a more pronounced audible signal.

In certain driving conditions (poor road surface or strong winds), the system may give alerts independent of the driver's level of vigilance.

The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:
– lane markings absent, worn, hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks);
– close to the vehicle ahead (lane markings not detected);
– roads that are narrow, winding, etc.

Active Lane Keeping Assistance

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.
Using a camera located at the top of the windscreen to identify lane markings on the road, the system corrects the trajectory of the vehicle while alerting the driver if it detects a risk of unintentionally crossing a line.
This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.



Conditions for operation

– Vehicle speed between 43 and 112 mph (70 and 180 km/h).
– Steering wheel held in both hands.

– Direction indicators not activated.
– ESC system activated and operational.

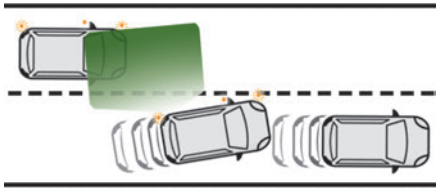
! The system helps the driver only if there is a risk of the vehicle unintentionally wandering from the lane it is being driven in. It does not manage the safe driving distance, vehicle speed or braking.
The driver must hold the steering wheel with both hands in a way that allows control to be maintained in circumstances where the system is not able to intervene (if lane markings disappear, for example).

Operation

Once the system identifies a risk of the vehicle involuntarily crossing one of the lane markings detected or a lane limit (e.g. grass border), it makes the necessary trajectory correction to return the vehicle to its initial path.
The driver will notice a turning movement of the steering wheel.

This warning lamp flashes during trajectory correction.

i The driver can prevent the correction by keeping a firm grip on the wheel (during an avoiding manoeuvre, for example).
The correction is interrupted immediately if the direction indicators are operated.



While the direction indicators are on and for a few seconds after switching them off, the system considers that any change of trajectory is intentional and no correction is triggered during this period.
However, with the Blind Spot Monitoring system activated, if the driver starts changing lanes and another vehicle is detected in the vehicle's blind spot, the system will correct the trajectory even though the direction indicators are on.
For more information on the **Blind Spot Monitoring**, refer to the corresponding section.

! If the system detects that the driver is not holding the wheel firmly enough during an automatic correction of trajectory, it interrupts the correction. An alert is triggered to encourage the driver to take back control of the vehicle.

Driving situations and related alerts

The table below describes the alerts and messages displayed in different driving situations.
These alerts are not displayed sequentially.
The "**Driving aids**" tab on the instrument panel display must have been selected.

Function status	Indicator lamp	Display and/or associated message	Comments
OFF		(grey)	Function deactivated.
ON		(grey)	System active, conditions not met: – speed below 44 mph (70 km/h), – no lane marking recognised, – ASR/DSC systems deactivated or operation of ESC system triggered, – "sport" driving.
ON		(grey)	Automatic deactivation/standby of the function (for example, due to detection of a trailer or use of the "space-saver" spare wheel provided with the vehicle).
ON		(green)	Lane marking detected. Speed above 44 mph (70 km/h).
ON		(orange)/(green)	The system corrects the trajectory on the side where the risk of unintentional crossing is detected (orange line).

Function status	Indicator lamp	Display and/or associated message	Comments
ON		(orange)/(green) "Hold the wheel"	– If, while correcting the trajectory, the system detects that the driver has not held the steering wheel for a few seconds, it stops correcting and returns control to the driver. – If, while correcting the trajectory, the system determines that the correction will not be enough and that a solid line will be crossed (orange line): the driver is warned that they must provide additional trajectory adjustment. The duration of audible warnings will increase if multiple corrections are performed in quick succession. The warning will become continuous, persisting until the driver responds. This message may also be displayed if you have your hands on the steering wheel.

Operating limits

The system goes into standby automatically in the following cases:
– ESC deactivated or operation triggered.
– Speed below 43 mph (70 km/h) or greater than 112 mph (180 km/h),
– Electrical connection of a trailer.
– Use of a"space-saver" spare wheel detected (as detection is not immediate, deactivation of the system is recommended).
– Dynamic driving style detected, pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal.
– Driving where there are no lane markings.
– Activation of the direction indicators.
– Crossing the inside line on a bend.
– Driving in a tight corner.
– Inactivity by the driver detected during correction.

! The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:
– Insufficient contrast between the road surface and the side of the road (e.g. shade).
– Lane markings worn, hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, etc.),
– Running close to the vehicle in front (the lane markings may not be detected).
– Roads that are narrow, winding.

Risk of undesirable operation

We recommend deactivating the system in the following driving situations:
– driving on damaged, unstable or very slippery (ice) road surfaces,
– unfavourable weather conditions,
– driving on a speed circuit,
– driving on a rolling road.

Deactivation/Activation

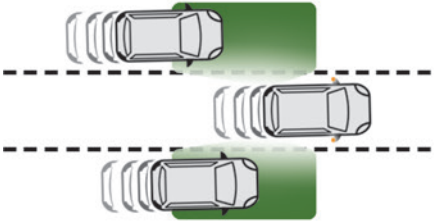
► Press this button to deactivate/reactivate the system at any time.
Deactivation is signalled by the lighting of the indicator lamp in the button.

Malfunction

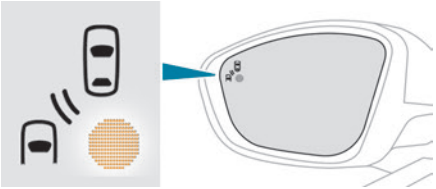
In the event of a system malfunction, these warning lamps come on on the instrument panel, accompanied by an onscreen message and an audible signal. Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Blind Spot Monitoring

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



This system includes sensors, placed on the sides of the bumpers, and warns the driver of the potentially dangerous presence of another vehicle (car, truck, motorcycle) in the blind spot areas of their vehicle (areas hidden from the driver's field of vision).



The warning is given by a fixed warning lamp that appears in the door mirror on the side in question:
– immediately, when being overtaken;
– after a delay of about one second, when overtaking a vehicle slowly.

Activation/Deactivation

It is set via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

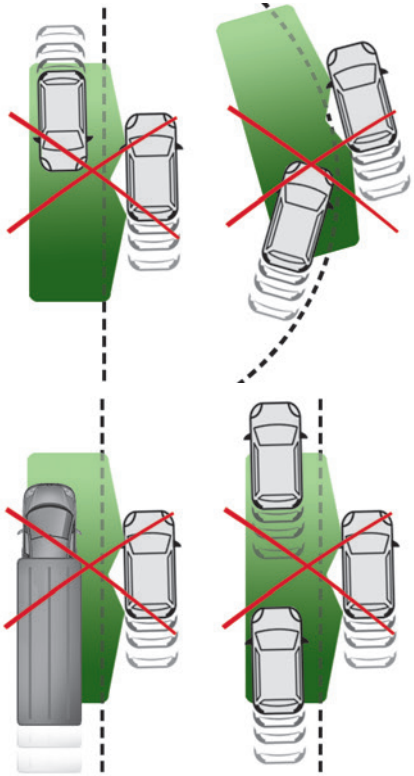
The status of the system is memorised when the ignition is switched off.

> i The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towing device approved by PEUGEOT.

Operating conditions

– All vehicles are moving in the same direction and in adjacent lanes.
– The speed of your vehicle must be between 7 and 87 mph (12 and 140 km/h).
– When overtaking a vehicle, the speed difference is less than 6 mph (10 km/h).
– When overtaken by a vehicle, the speed difference is less than 16 mph (25 km/h).
– Traffic is flowing normally.
– Overtaking a vehicle over a certain period of time and the vehicle being overtaken remains in the blind spot.
– You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
– Your vehicle is not pulling a trailer, a caravan, etc.

Operating limits



No alert is triggered in the following conditions:

– In the presence of non-moving objects (parked vehicles, barriers, street lamps, road signs, etc.).
– Oncoming traffic.
– Driving on a winding road or a sharp corner.
– When overtaking or being overtaken by a very long vehicle (lorry, bus, etc.) that is detected in the rear blind spot but is also present in the driver's front field of vision.
– When overtaking quickly.
– In very heavy traffic: vehicles detected in front and behind are confused with a lorry or a stationary object.
– If the Park Assist function is activated.

Malfunction

If the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

The system may suffer temporary interference in certain weather conditions (rain, hail, etc.).
In particular, driving on a wet surface or moving from a dry area to a wet area can cause false alerts (for example, the presence of a fog of water droplets in the blind spot can be interpreted as a vehicle).
In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered by mud, ice or snow.
Take care not to cover the warning zone in the door mirrors, or the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper correct operation of the system.

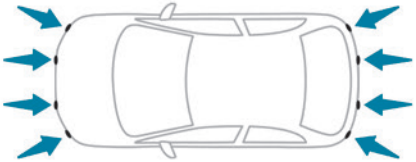
Active Blind Spot Monitoring System

In addition to the fixed warning lamp in the door mirror on the side in question, a correction of trajectory will be felt if you attempt to cross a lane marking with the direction indicators on, to help you avoid a collision.
This system is the combination of the Active Lane Keeping Assistance and Blind Spot Monitoring.
These two functions must be activated and in operation.
The speed of the vehicle must be between 40 and 87 mph (65 and 140 km/h) inclusive.
These functions are especially suitable for driving on motorways and main roads.
For more information on the **Active Lane Keeping Assistance** and **Blind Spot Monitoring**, refer to the corresponding sections.

This system is a driving aid which cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Parking sensors

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

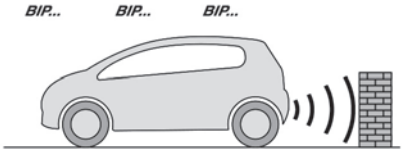


Using sensors located in the bumper, this system signals the proximity of obstacles (e.g. pedestrian, vehicle, tree, barrier) present in their field of detection.

Rear parking sensors

The system is switched on by engaging reverse gear, which is confirmed by an audible signal. The system is switched off when disengaging reverse gear.

Audible assistance



The system signals the presence of obstacles within the sensors' detection zone.

The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.
When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than about thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.
The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) indicates the side on which the obstacle is located.

Visual assistance

This supplements the audible signal by displaying bars on the screen that represent the distance between the obstacle and the vehicle (white: more distant, orange: close, red: very close).
When the obstacle is very close, the "Danger" symbol is displayed on the screen.

Front parking sensors

In addition to the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is still below 6 mph (10 km/h).
The front parking sensors are interrupted if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if an obstacle is no longer detected or when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

> The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) locates the obstacle in relation to the vehicle, in the vehicle trajectory, in front or behind.

Deactivation/Activation

It is set via the vehicle configuration menu.
The system status is memorised when the ignition is switched off.

> The rear parking sensors system will be deactivated automatically if a trailer or bicycle carrier is connected to a towing device installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

The parking sensors are deactivated while the Park Assist function is measuring a space.
For more information on the **Park Assist**, refer to the corresponding section.

Operating limits

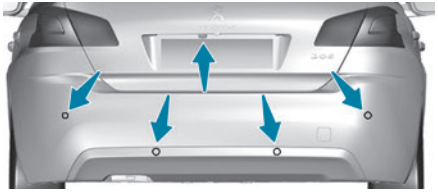
If the boot is heavily loaded, the vehicle may tilt, affecting distance measurements.

Malfunction

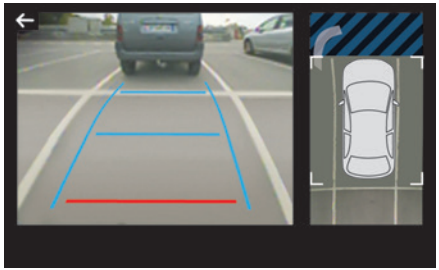
In the event of a malfunction when changing into reverse, this warning lamp comes on on the instrument panel, accompanied by an onscreen message and an audible signal (short beep).
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Visiopark 1

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

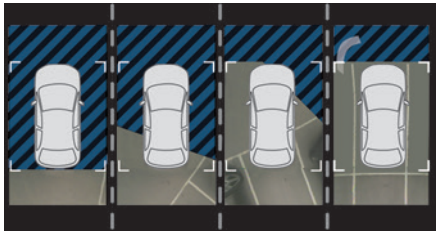


As soon as reverse gear is engaged with the engine running, this system displays views of your vehicle's close surroundings on the touch screen using a camera located at the rear of the vehicle.



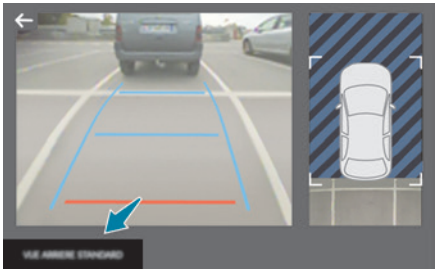
The screen is divided into two parts with a contextual view and a view from above the vehicle in its close surroundings.
The parking sensors supplement the information on the view from above the vehicle.
Various contextual views may be displayed:
– Standard view.
– 180° view.
– Zoom view.
AUTO mode is activated by default.
In this mode, the system chooses the best view to display (standard or zoom).
You can change the type of view at any time during a manoeuvre.
The system status is not saved when the ignition is switched off.

Principle of operation



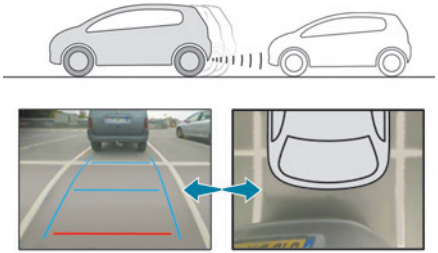
Using the rear camera, the vehicle's close surroundings are recorded during manoeuvres at low speed.
An image from above your vehicle in its close surroundings is reconstructed (represented between the brackets) in real time and as the manoeuvre progresses.
It facilitates the alignment of your vehicle when parking and allows obstacles close to the vehicle to be seen. It is automatically deleted if the vehicle remains stationary for too long.

Rear view



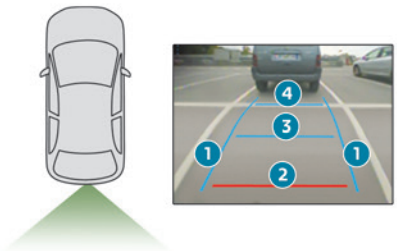
To activate the camera located on the tailgate, engage reverse gear and do not exceed a speed of 6 mph (10 km/h).
The system is deactivated:
– If a trailer is attached or a bicycle carrier is fitted on a towing device (vehicle fitted with a towing device installed in line with the manufacturer's recommendations).
– Automatically, at speeds above approximately 6 mph (10 km/h),
– Automatically, if the tailgate is opened.
– Upon changing out of reverse gear (the image remains displayed for 7 seconds).
– By pressing the white arrow in the upper-left corner of the touch screen.

AUTO mode



This mode is activated by default.
Using sensors in the rear bumper, the automatic view changes from the rear view (standard) to the view from above (zoom) as an obstacle is approached at the level of the red line (less than 30 cm) during a manoeuvre.

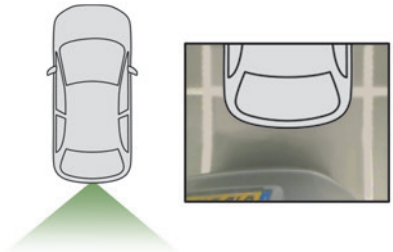
Standard view



The area behind the vehicle is displayed on the screen.

The blue lines **1** represent the width of your vehicle, with the mirrors unfolded; their direction changes according to the position of the steering wheel.
The red line **2** represents a distance of 30 cm from the rear bumper; the two blue lines **3** and **4** represent 1 m and 2 m, respectively.
This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

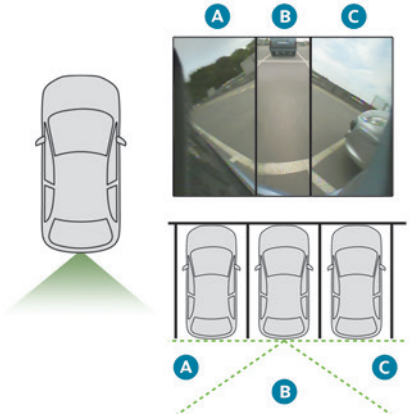
Zoom view



The camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the manoeuvre in order to create a view from above the rear of the vehicle in its near surroundings, allowing the vehicle to be manoeuvred around nearby obstacles.
This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.
It is important to monitor the sides of the vehicle during the manoeuvre, using the mirrors.
Parking sensors also provide additional information about the area around the vehicle.

180° view



The 180° view facilitates reversing out of a parking space, making it possible to see the approach of vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists.
This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre.
It features 3 areas: left **A**, centre **B** and right **C**.

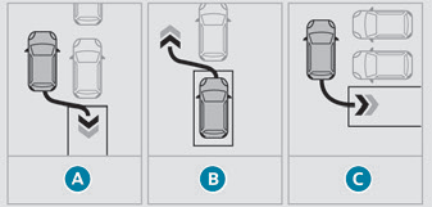
This view is only available via the view selection menu.

Park Assist

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.
This system provides active parking assistance: it detects a parking space then operates the steering system to park in this space.
With a **manual gearbox**, the driver manages the accelerator, brakes, gears and clutch.
With an **automatic gearbox (EAT6/EAT8)**, the driver manages the accelerator, brakes and gears.
During phases of entry into and exit from a parking space, the system provides visual and audible information to the driver in order to make the manoeuvres safe. Several forward and reverse manoeuvres may be required.
At any time, the driver can take back control by holding the steering wheel.

In some circumstances, the sensors may not detect small obstacles located in their blind spots.

The Park Assist system cannot work with the engine off.



The Park Assist system provides assistance for the following manoeuvres:
A. Entry into a "parallel" parking space.
B. Exit from a "parallel" parking space.
C. Entry into a "bay" parking space.

During manoeuvring phases, the steering wheel performs rapid turns: do not hold the steering wheel, do not put your hands between the spokes of the steering wheel. Watch out for any object that could interfere with the manoeuvre (loose clothing, scarves, ties, etc.)- risk of injury!

When Park Assist is activated, it prevents Stop & Start from going into STOP mode. In STOP mode, activation of Park Assist restarts the engine.

The Park Assist system takes control of the steering for a maximum of 4 manoeuvring cycles. The function is deactivated after these 4 cycles. If you think that your vehicle is not positioned correctly,

you should then take over the steering to finish the manoeuvre.

! The sequence of manoeuvres and the driving instructions are displayed on the touch screen.

AUTO Assistance is activated: the display of this symbol and a speed limit indicate that the steering manoeuvres are controlled by the system: do not touch the steering wheel.

OFF Assistance is deactivated: the display of this symbol indicates that the steering manoeuvres are no longer controlled by the system: you must take over the steering.

! You should always check the surroundings of your vehicle before starting a manoeuvre.

i The parking sensors function is not available during parking space measurement. It intervenes later when manoeuvring to warn you that your vehicle is approaching an obstacle: the audible signal becomes continuous when the obstacle is less than thirty centimetres away.
If you have deactivated the parking sensors, they are automatically reactivated during assisted parking manoeuvres.

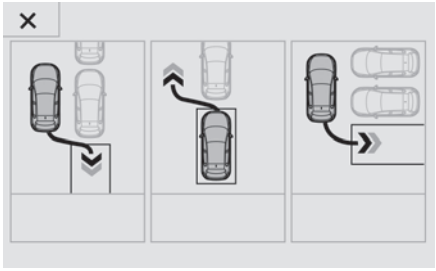
! Activation of Park Assist deactivates the Blind Spot Monitoring.

Operation

Assistance with "parallel" parking manoeuvres

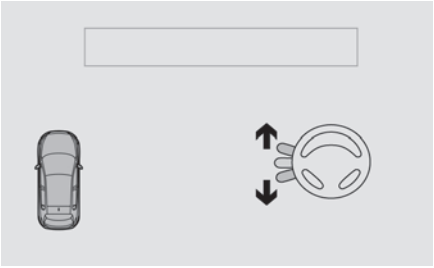
When you have located a parking space:

► Select "**Park Assist**" in the **Vehicle/ Driving** menu, then the **Driving functions** tab on the touch screen to activate the function.

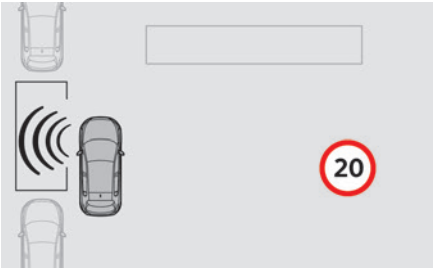


► Limit the vehicle speed to a maximum of 12 mph (20 km/h) and select "**Enter parking slot**"on the touch screen.

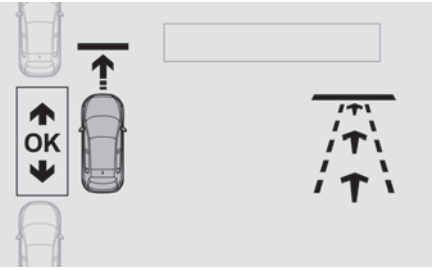
i To enter a parking space, the system does not identify spaces that are clearly smaller or larger than the vehicle.



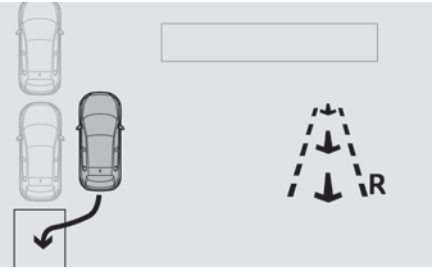
► Operate the direction indicator on the side you have chosen to park, in order to activate the measurement function. You should drive at a distance of between 0.5 m and 1.5 m from the row of parked vehicles.



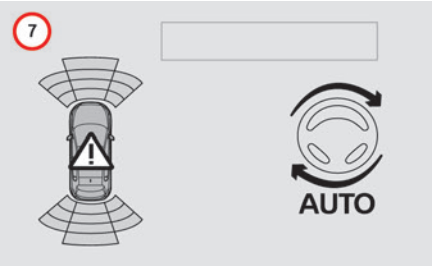
► Drive slowly following the instructions until the system finds a free space.



► Move forwards slowly until a message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal, asking you to engage reverse gear.



► Select reverse, release the steering wheel and start moving without exceeding 4 mph (7 km/h).



► The assisted parking manoeuvre is in progress.

– Without exceeding 4 mph (7 km/h), move forwards and backwards, aided by the warnings from the "Parking sensors" system, until the end of the manoeuvre is indicated.

► At the end of the manoeuvre, the indicator lamp on the instrument panel goes off, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.

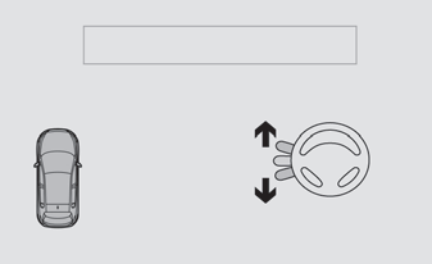
– Parking assistance is deactivated: you can take over the controls again.

Assistance in exiting from a "parallel" parking space

► When you want to leave a "parallel" parking space, start the engine.

► With the vehicle stationary, select "**Park Assist**" in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu, then the **Driving functions** tab on the touch screen to activate the function.

► Press "**Exit parking slot**" on the touch screen.



► Operate the direction indicator on the side you wish to exit.

► Engage reverse or forward gear and release the steering wheel.

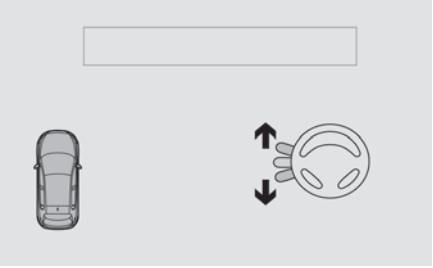
► The assisted parking manoeuvre is in progress. Without exceeding 3 mph (5 km/h), move forwards and backwards, aided by the warnings from the "Parking sensors" system, until the end of the manoeuvre is indicated.

The manoeuvre is complete when the vehicle's front wheels are clear of the parking space.
At the end of the manoeuvre, the indicator lamp on the instrument panel goes off, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.
Parking assistance is deactivated: you can take over the controls again.

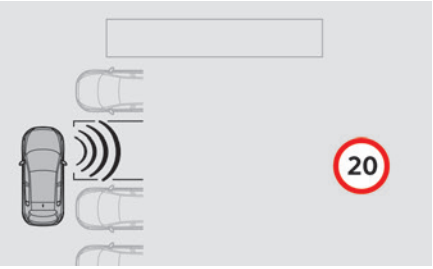
Assistance with "bay" parking manoeuvres

► Once you have identified a parking area, select "**Park Assist**" in the **Vehicle/ Driving** menu, then the **Driving functions** tab on the touch screen to activate the function.

► Limit the vehicle speed to a maximum of 12 mph (20 km/h) and select "**Start parking in a bay**"on the touch screen.

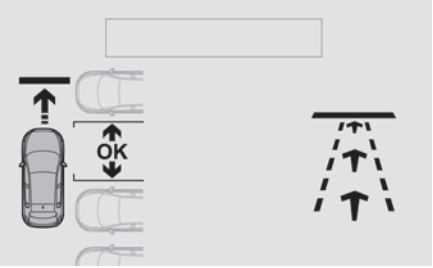


► Operate the direction indicator on the side you have chosen to park in order to activate the measurement function. You should drive at a distance of between 0.5 m and 1.5 m from the row of parked vehicles.

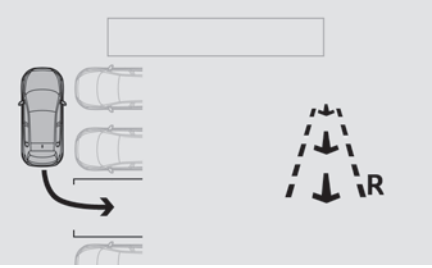


► Drive slowly following the instructions until the system finds a free space.

i When several successive spaces are found, the vehicle will be directed towards the last one.



► Move forwards slowly until a message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal, asking you to engage reverse gear.



► Select reverse, release the steering wheel and start moving without exceeding 4 mph (7 km/h).

► The assisted parking manoeuvre is in progress.

– Without exceeding 4 mph (7 km/h), follow the instructions displayed on the instrument panel, aided by the warnings from the "Parking sensors" system, until the end of the manoeuvre is indicated.

At the end of the manoeuvre, the indicator lamp in the instrument panel goes off, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.
Parking assistance is deactivated: you can take over the controls again.

During a "bay" parking manoeuvre, the Park Assist system is automatically deactivated once the rear of the vehicle is within 50 cm of an obstacle.

During parking and exit from parking manoeuvres, the Reversing camera function may come into operation. It facilitates monitoring of the surroundings of the vehicle, by displaying additional information in the instrument panel.
For more information on the **Reversing camera**, refer to the corresponding section.

Deactivation

The system is deactivated by pressing the control.

The system is deactivated automatically:
– on switching off the ignition,
– if the engine stalls,
– if no manoeuvre is performed within 5 minutes of selecting the type of manoeuvre
– after a prolonged stop of the vehicle during a manoeuvre,
– if the road wheel anti-slip regulation (ASR) is triggered,
– if the speed of the vehicle exceeds the stated limit,
– when the driver interrupts movement of the steering wheel,
– after 4 manoeuvre cycles,
– on opening the driver's door,
– if one of the front wheels encounters an obstacle.

This symbol is displayed on the touch screen and a message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.
The driver should then take back control of the vehicle's steering.
If the system is deactivated during a manoeuvre, the driver should reactivate it to repeat the measurement.

Deactivation

The system is switched off automatically:
– when towing a trailer,
– if the driver's door is opened,
– if the speed of the vehicle is above 45 mph (70 km/h).

To switch the system off for a prolonged period, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Malfunctions

This warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel and a message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.

If the lateral distance between your vehicle and the space is too great, the system may not be able to measure the space.
Any object exceeding the dimensions of the vehicle is not taken into account by the Park Assist system during a manoeuvre.

In bad weather or in winter, ensure that the sensors are not covered by dirt, ice or snow.
In the event of a fault, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

PEUGEOT & TOTAL PARTNERS IN PERFORMANCE!

For over 20 years, the PEUGEOT TOTAL partnership has pushed the boundaries of performance to achieve successes in the most difficult of conditions, with the victories in the Le Mans 24 Hours, in the Dakar Rally, and also those by all of our Rally customers around the world. To obtain these exceptional results, the Peugeot Sport teams chose TOTAL QUARTZ, a high-tech lubricant that protects the engine in the most extreme conditions.

TOTAL QUARTZ protects your engine against the effects of time.

TOTAL QUARTZ INEO FIRST is a very high-performance lubricant developed jointly by the Peugeot and Total R&D teams. Specially formulated for the engines in Peugeot vehicles, its innovative technology significantly reduces CO_2 emissions and effectively protects your engine against clogging.

PEUGEOT

TOTAL

OFFICIAL PARTNERS

PEUGEOT RECOMMENDS TOTAL

Compatibility of fuels

E5 E10

Petrol fuels conforming to the EN228 standard containing up to 5% and 10% ethanol respectively.

B7 B10 B20 B30

Diesel fuels conforming to the EN590, EN16734 and EN16709 standards and containing up to 7%, 10%, 20% and 30% fatty acid methyl ester respectively. The use of B20 or B30 fuels, even occasionally, imposes special maintenance conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

XTL

Paraffinic Diesel fuel conforming to the EN15940 standard.

! The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel, etc.) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

i The only fuel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 (petrol) or B715000 (Diesel) standards.

Diesel at low temperature

At temperatures below 0 °C (+32 °F), the formation of paraffins in summer-type Diesel fuels could prevent the engine from operating correctly. In these temperature conditions, use winter-type Diesel fuel and keep the fuel tank more than 50 % full.
At temperatures below -15 °C (+5 °F) to avoid problems starting, it is best to park the vehicle under shelter (heated garage).

Travelling abroad

Certain fuels could damage your vehicle's engine.
In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific trade name, etc.) to ensure correct operation of the engine.
For all additional information, consult a dealer.

Refuelling

Fuel tank capacity: approximately 53 litres (or 45 litres depending on version).
Reserve level: approximately 6 litres.

Low fuel level

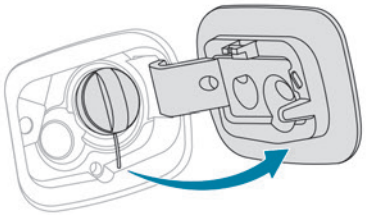
When the low fuel level is reached, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal. When it first comes on, **about 6 litres** of fuel remain.
Until sufficient fuel is added, this warning lamp appears every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an onscreen message and an audible signal. When driving, this message and audible signal are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards **0**.
You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.
For more information on **Running out of fuel (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

i A small arrow by the warning lamp indicates which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is located on.

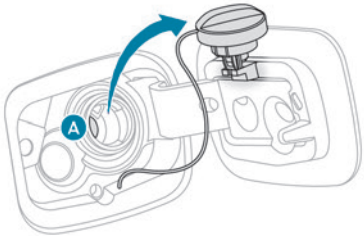
! **Stop & Start**
Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition.

Refuelling

At least 6 litres of fuel must be added in order to be registered by the fuel gauge.
Opening the filler cap may create a noise caused by an inrush of air. This is entirely normal and results from the sealing of the fuel system.



► Take care to select the pump that delivers the correct fuel type for your vehicle's engine (see a reminder label on the inside of the filler flap).
► Insert the key into the filler cap, if your vehicle has a standard key.
► Turn the filler cap to the left.



► Remove the filler cap and hang it on its carrier (on the filler flap).
► Insert the nozzle as far as it will go (pressing against the metal non-return valve **A**).
► Fill the tank. **Do not continue past the third nozzle cut-off, as this may cause malfunctions.**
► Put the filler cap back in place and close it by turning it to the right.
► Push the fuel filler flap to close it (your vehicle must be unlocked).
Your vehicle is fitted with a catalytic converter, a device which helps to reduce the level of harmful emissions in exhaust gases.

For petrol engines, you must use unleaded fuel.
The filler neck is narrower, admitting petrol nozzles only.

! If you have put in the wrong fuel for your vehicle, you must have the fuel tank drained and filled with the correct fuel before starting the engine.

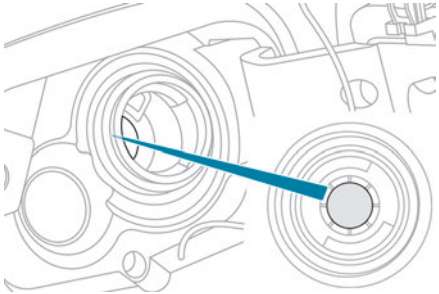
For the THP 225 S&S EAT8 engine, the use of RON98 unleaded petrol is recommended to ensure optimum engine performance.

Fuel cut-off

Your vehicle is fitted with a safety system that cuts off the supply of fuel in the event of an impact.

Diesel misfuel prevention

Mechanical device which prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol. It avoids the risk of engine damage that can result from filling with the wrong fuel.
Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device appears when the filler cap is removed.



When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into the fuel filler neck of a Diesel vehicle, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.
Do not persist but instead insert a Diesel filler nozzle.

i It is still possible to use a fuel can to fill the tank slowly.
In order to ensure a good flow of fuel, do not place the nozzle of the fuel can in direct contact with the flap of the misfuel prevention device.

i **Travelling abroad**
As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible.
Before travelling abroad, it is advisable to check with a PEUGEOT dealer if the vehicle is suitable for the distribution equipment of the countries visited.

Snow chains

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

! Snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

i Observe the legislation in force in your country relating to the use of snow chains and maximum authorised speeds.

Only use chains that have been designed for the type of wheel fitted to your vehicle.

Original tyre size	Type of chain
195/65 R15	9 mm link
205/55 R16	
225/45 R17	
225/40 R18	K-Summit K23
235/35 R19	Polaire Grip 70

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Installation tips

► To fit the chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface on the side of the road.
► Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks under the wheels to prevent movement of the vehicle.
► Fit the chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
► Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 31 mph (50 km/h).
► Stop the vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

i It is strongly recommended that before you leave, you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface.

! Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow to avoid damaging the vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If the vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

Very cold climate screen

Removable protective screen which prevents the accumulation of snow at the radiator cooling fan.

i It is recommended that the screen be fitted and removed by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Before any operation, ensure that the engine is off and the cooling fan has stopped.

Fitting

► Position the screen in front of the top part of the upper grille in the front bumper.
► Press the screen to clip the fixing clips.

! Do not fit the very cold climate screen if the vehicle has the PureTech 263 S&S BVM6 engine.

Removing

► Use a screwdriver as a lever to release each fixing clip in turn.

! Do not forget to remove the very cold climate screen:
– when the external temperature is greater than 10°C (e.g. in summer),
– in the event of a recovery,
– at speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).

Towing device

Load distribution

► Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle, and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. The maximum towable load must be reduced by 10% per 1,000 metres of altitude.

Use genuine towing devices and their wiring harnesses approved by PEUGEOT. We recommend having them fitted by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

If not fitted by a PEUGEOT dealer, they must still be fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.

Certain driving or manoeuvring aid functions are automatically deactivated while an approved towing system is in use.

Comply with the maximum authorised towable weight, as indicated on your vehicle's registration certificate, on the manufacturer's label and in the **Technical data** section of this guide.

Complying with the maximum authorised nose weight (towball weight) also includes the use of accessories (bicycle carriers, tow boxes, etc.).

Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.

GTi towing

Your vehicle cannot be fitted with a tow-bar.

Towing device with towball

Before each use

To ensure the towball is correctly fitted, check the follow points:

Saloon:

– The green mark on the wheel is in line with the green mark on the towball.

– The wheel is in contact with the towball (position **A**).

– The safety lock is on and the key removed; the wheel can no longer be operated.

– The towball must not be able to move in its carrier; test by attempting to move it with your hand.

SW :

– The towball is correctly engaged (position **A**).

– The safety lock is on and the key removed; the trigger can no longer be operated.

– The towball must not be able to move in its carrier; test by attempting to move it with your hand.

If the towball is not engaged, the trailer can become detached - Accident risk!

During use

Never release the locking system when a trailer or load carrier is connected to the towball.

Never exceed the maximum authorised weight for the vehicle - Gross Train Weight or GTW.

Always comply with the maximum authorised load on the towing device: if it is exceeded, this device may become detached from the vehicle - risk of an accident!

Check that the trailer lamps work correctly.

Before setting off, check and/or adjust headlamp beam height.

For more information on **Headlamp height adjustment**, refer to the corresponding section.

Following use

When travelling without a trailer or load on a towbar-mounted carrier, the towball must be removed and the protective plug inserted in the carrier. This measure applies particularly where the towball might obscure visibility of the number plate or its lighting.

Blanking plug

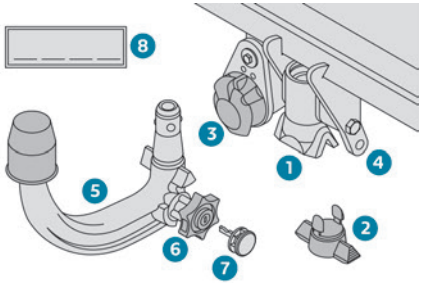
In the event of recovery, it is essential to remove the blanking plug if your vehicle has one.
To do this, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

The blanking plug behind the lower air intake grille.

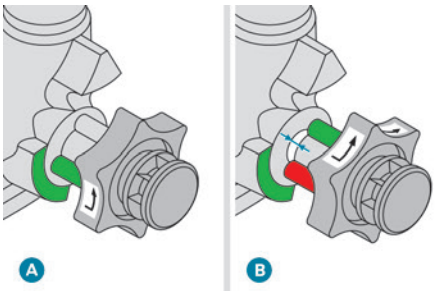
Towbar with quickly detachable towball (hatchback)

Presentation

This genuine towing device can be fitted and removed with no need for tools.



1. Carrier
2. Protective plug
3. Connection socket
4. Safety eye
5. Detachable towball
6. Locking/unlocking wheel
7. Security key lock
8. Label to note the key references



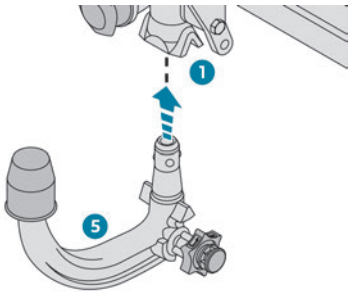
A. **Locked** position (the **green** marks are opposite each other); the wheel is in contact with the towball (no gap).
B. **Unlocked** position (**red** mark opposite the **green** mark); the wheel is no longer in contact with the towball (gap of around 5 mm).

Trailers with LED lamps are not compatible with the wiring harness of this device.

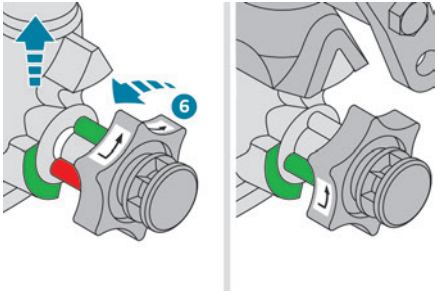
To ensure complete safety while driving with a **Towing device**, refer to the corresponding section.

Fitting the towball

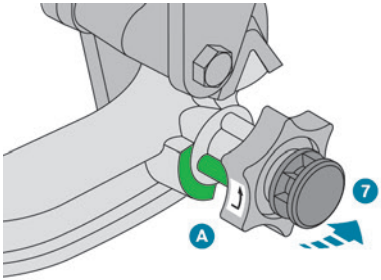
► Below the rear bumper, remove the protective plug **2** from the carrier **1**.



► Insert the end of the towball **5** into the carrier **1** and push it upwards; it will lock into place automatically.

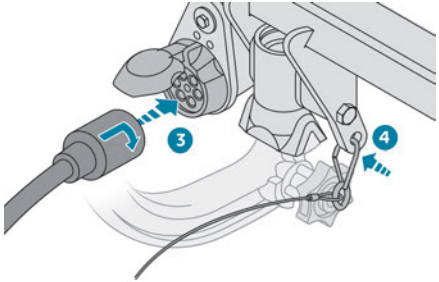


► The wheel **6** turns a quarter of a turn anti-clockwise; take care to keep your hands clear!



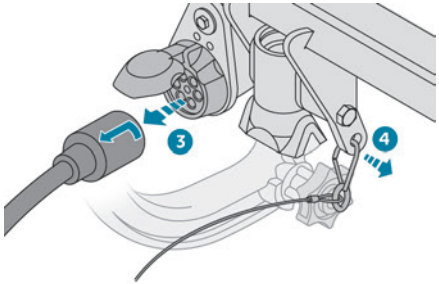
► Check that the mechanism has correctly locked into place (position **A**).
► Close the lock **7** using the key.
► Always remove the key. The key cannot be removed when the lock is open.

► Clip the cap onto the lock.

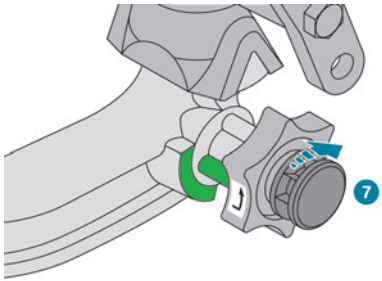


► Remove the protective cover from the towball.
► Attach the trailer to the towball.
► Attach the safety cable from the trailer to the safety eye **4** on the carrier.
► Insert the trailer's plug into the connection socket **3** on the carrier and rotate it a quarter turn to connect it.

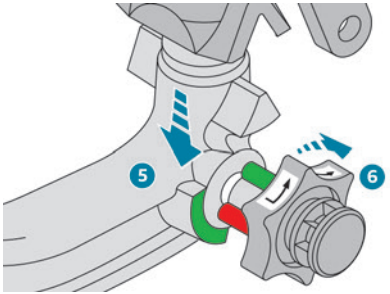
Removing the towball



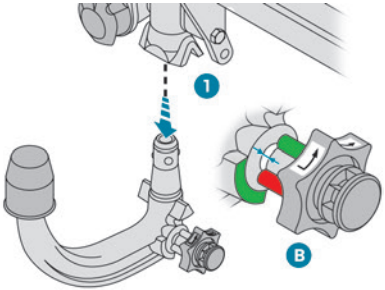
► Grasp the trailer's plug, perform a quarter turn and pull to disconnect it from the connection socket **3** on the carrier.
► Detach the trailer's safety cable from the safety eye **4** on the carrier.
► Unhitch the trailer from the towball.
► Replace the protective cover over the towball.
► Remove the cap from the lock and press it onto the head of the key.



► Insert the key into the lock **7**.
► Open the lock using the key.



► Hold the towball **5** firmly in one hand; using the other hand, pull and turn the wheel **6** fully in a clockwise direction until it stops; do not release the wheel.



► Extract the towball from the base of its carrier **1**.
► Release the wheel; it automatically locks in the unlocked position (position **B**).

► Replace the protective plug **2** into the carrier **1**.
► Stow the towball in its bag to protect it from knocks and dirt.

Maintenance

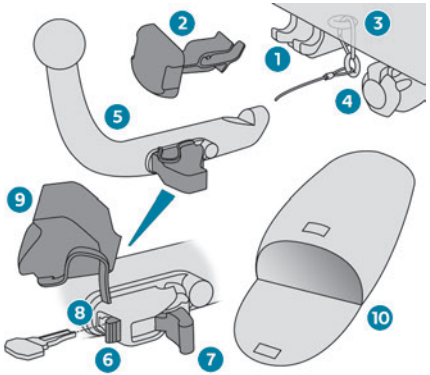
Correct operation is only possible if the towball and its carrier are kept clean.
Before cleaning the vehicle with a high-pressure jet wash, the towball must be removed and the protective plug fitted to the carrier.

> ℹ Apply the label provided to a clearly visible area, close to the carrier or in the boot.
> Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for any work on the towbar system.

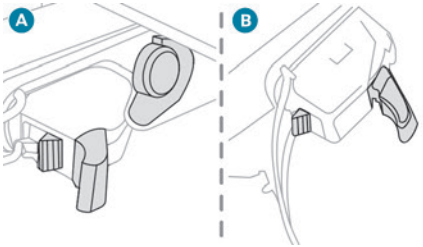
Towbar with quickly detachable towball (SW)

Presentation

No tools are required to install or remove this genuine towing device.



1. Carrier
2. Protective plug
3. Safety eye
4. Connection socket
5. Detachable towball
6. Locking/unlocking latch
7. Locking/unlocking trigger
8. Key-operated safety lock
9. Locking system protective cap
10. Stowing bag



A. Locked position
The latch is positioned to the right.
The trigger is facing toward the rear.
B. Unlocked position
The latch is positioned to the left.
The trigger is facing toward the front.

! Observe the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.

i To find out how much weight your vehicle can tow, consult the "Technical data" section.
To ensure complete safety while driving with a **Towing device**, refer to the corresponding section.

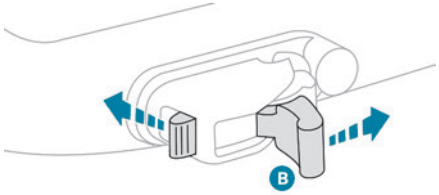
Maintenance

Correct operation is only possible if the towball and its carrier are kept clean.
Before cleaning the vehicle with a high-pressure jet wash, the towball must be removed and the protective plug fitted to the carrier.

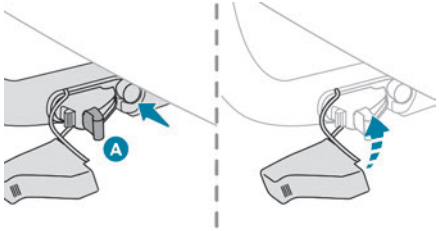
Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for any work on the towbar system.

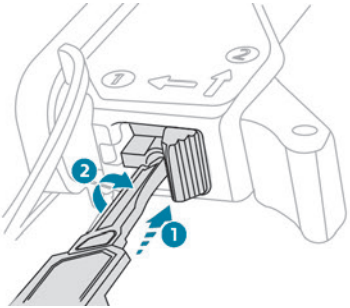
Fitting the towball

► Below the rear bumper, unclip and remove the protective plug from the carrier.

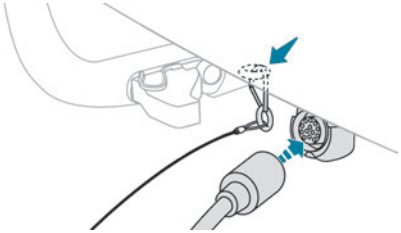


► On the towball, push the latch to the left and hold it in this position.
► At the same time, push the trigger forwards to unlock the mechanism (position **B**).
► Insert the end of the towball into the carrier and push it as far as it will go.





► Ensure that the two pins are in full contact with the notches in the carrier, that the trigger has popped back and the latch has moved to the right to lock the mechanism (position **A**).
► Insert the key into the lock and turn it to the right.
► Remove the key from the lock.
► Install the protective cap and clip it into place by turning it to the left.

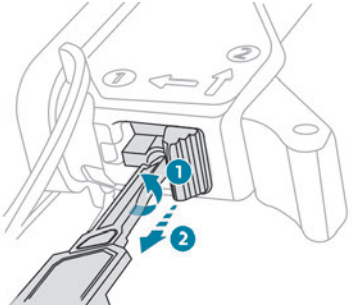


► Attach the trailer to the towball.
► Attach the trailer safety cable to the safety eye fitted on the towball's carrier.

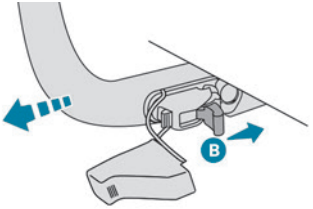
► Lift the protective cover on the connection socket and connect the trailer's electric plug.

Removing the towball

► Disconnect the trailer's electric plug from the connection socket on the carrier.
► Detach the trailer safety cable from the safety eye on the carrier.
► Unhitch the trailer from the towball.



► Unclip the protective cap and remove it by turning it to the right.
► Insert the key into the lock and turn it to the left.
► Remove the key from the lock.



► On the towball, push the latch to the left and hold it in this position.
► At the same time, push the trigger forwards to unlock the mechanism (position **B**).
► Press the trigger fully in and unhitch the towball by pulling it towards you.
► Install the protective plug and clip it into place on the carrier located below the rear bumper.
► Stow the towball in its bag.

Energy economy mode

This system manages the duration of use of certain functions, in order to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery with the ignition off. After switching off the engine, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematic system, the wipers and the dipped beam headlamps or courtesy lamps, for a combined duration of approximately 40 minutes.

Selecting the mode

A confirmation message is displayed when energy economy mode is entered, and the active functions are placed on standby.

> **i** If a telephone call is in progress at the time, it will be maintained for around 10 minutes via the audio system's hands-free system.

Exiting the mode

These functions are automatically reactivated the next time the vehicle is used.
To restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run:
– For less than 10 minutes, to use the equipment for approximately 5 minutes.
– For more than 10 minutes, to use the equipment for approximately 30 minutes.
Let the engine run for the specified duration to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient.
To recharge the battery, avoid repeatedly or continuously restarting the engine.

> **!** A flat battery prevents the engine from starting.
> For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

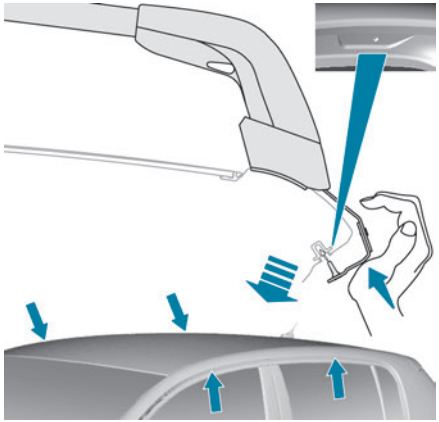
Load reduction mode

This system manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.
When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning and the heated rear screen.
The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Fitting roof bars

Fitting directly to the roof

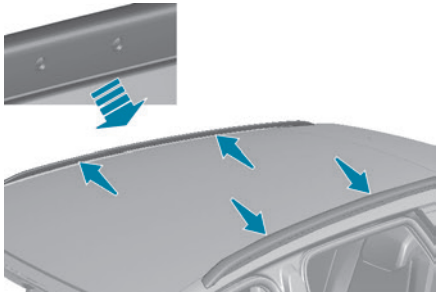
To install the roof bars, you must secure them only to the four fixing points on the roof frame. These points are concealed by the vehicle's doors when they are closed.



! Use accessories approved by PEUGEOT and follow the manufacturer's recommendations and fitting instructions so as to avoid the risk of damaging the bodywork (deformation, scratches, etc.).

i Do not exceed the maximum authorised load, shown in the instructions for the roof bars.
If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road, to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the roof.
Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects that are longer than the vehicle.

Fitting on longitudinal bars



The transverse bars must be fixed at the engraved markings on the longitudinal bars.

! As a safety measure and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use the transverse bars approved for your vehicle. Observe the instructions on fitting and use contained in the guide supplied with the roof bars.

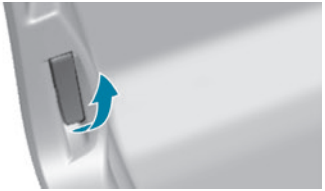
! **Recommendations**
Distribute the load uniformly, taking care to avoid overloading one side.
Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.
Secure the load firmly.
Drive gently: the vehicle will be more susceptible to the effects of side winds and the stability of the vehicle may be affected.

On a long journey, check the security of the load at every stop.
Remove the roof bars once they are no longer needed.

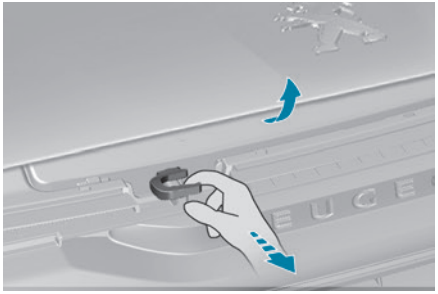
Bonnet

Opening

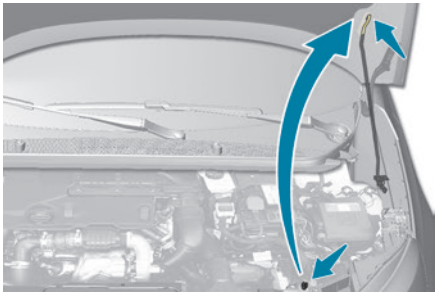
► Open the left-hand front door.



► Pull the release lever, located at the bottom of the door frame, towards you.



► Pull the safety catch towards you, then raise the bonnet.



► Unclip the stay from its housing and place it in the support slot to hold the bonnet open.

! Do not open the bonnet in very windy conditions.
When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the stay with care (risk of burns).
In order to avoid damaging the electrical units, you **must never** use high pressure washing to clean the engine compartment.

Closing

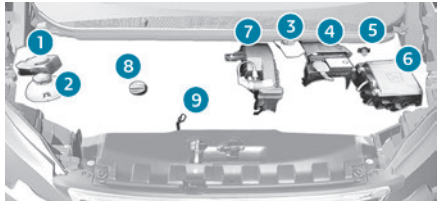
► Take the stay out of the support slot.
► Clip the stay in its housing.
► Lower the bonnet and release it near the end of its travel.
► Pull on the bonnet to check that it has latched correctly.

! **Stop & Start**
Before doing anything under the bonnet, you must switch off the ignition to avoid any risk of injury resulting from an automatic change to START mode.

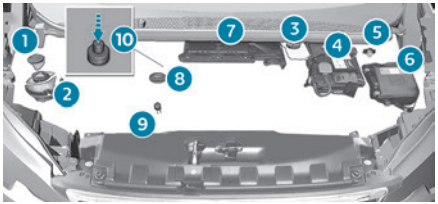
Engine compartment

The engine shown here is an example for illustrative purposes only.
The locations of the following elements may vary:
– Air filter.
– Engine oil dipstick.
– Engine oil filler cap.

Petrol engine



Diesel engine



1. Screenwash fluid reservoir
2. Engine coolant reservoir
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Battery/Fuses
5. Remote earth point (-)
6. Fusebox
7. Air filter
8. Engine oil filler cap
9. Engine oil dipstick
10. Priming pump*

! The Diesel fuel system operates under very high pressure.
All work on this circuit must be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Checking levels

Check all of the following levels regularly in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if required, unless otherwise indicated.
If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The fluids must comply with the manufacturer's requirements and with the vehicle's engine.

! Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Used products

! Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.
Most of these fluids are harmful to health and very corrosive.

Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.
Empty used oil into the containers reserved for this purpose at a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

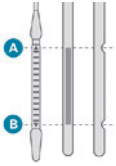
Engine oil

The level is checked, with the engine having been switched off for at least 30 minutes and on level ground, either using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on (for vehicles equipped with an electric gauge), or using the dipstick.
It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). It is recommended that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3,000 miles (5,000 km).

! In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emissions control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Checking using the dipstick

For the location of the dipstick, please refer to the illustration of the corresponding engine compartment.
► Grasp the dipstick by its coloured grip and pull it out completely.
► Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean, lint-free cloth.



* Depending on engine.

► Reinsert the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to visually check the oil level: the correct level is between marks **A** (max) and **B (min).**

Do not start the engine if the level is:

– above mark **A**: contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

– below mark **B**: top up the engine oil immediately.

Oil grade
Before topping up or changing the engine oil, check that the oil is suitable for your engine and complies with the recommendations in the service schedule supplied with the vehicle (or available from your PEUGEOT dealer or qualified workshop).
Use of non-recommended oil may invalidate your warranty in the event of engine failure.

Topping up the engine oil level

For the location of the engine oil filler cap, please refer to the corresponding under-bonnet engine compartment illustration.

► Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).

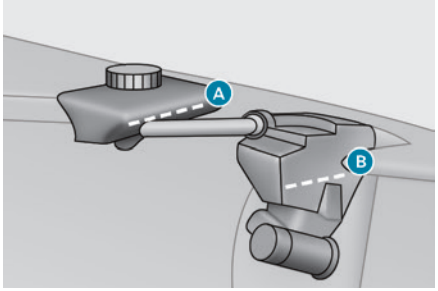
► Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.

► Top up the level if necessary.

► After checking the level, carefully screw the oil filler cap back on and replace the dipstick in its tube.

Within 30 minutes of adding oil, the oil level indication in the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on is not valid.

Brake fluid



The brake fluid level must be between mark "**A**" (MAX located on the remote reservoir) and mark "**B**" (MIN located on the main reservoir). If not, check the brake pads for wear.

To know how often the brake fluid should be replaced, refer to the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

Clean the cap before removing it to refill. Use only DOT4 brake fluid from a sealed container.

Engine coolant

It is normal to top up this fluid between two services.

The check and top-up must only be done with the engine cold.

A level of coolant that is too low risks causing major damage to the engine; the coolant level must be close to the "**MAX**" mark without ever going above it.

If the level is close to or below the "**MIN**" mark, it is essential to top up.

When the engine is hot, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.

As the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.

In order to avoid the risk of scalding if you need to top up in an emergency, wrap a cloth around the cap and unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.

Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up to the required level.

Screenwash fluid

Top up to the required level when necessary.

Fluid specification

The fluid must be topped up with a pre-mixed product.

In winter (temperatures below zero), a fluid containing an anti-freeze agent which is

appropriate for the temperature conditions must be used in order to protect the system's components (pump, tank, ducts, jets).

! Filling with pure water is prohibited in all circumstances (risk of freezing, limescale, etc.).

Diesel fuel additive (Diesel with particle filter)

On reaching the minimum level in the particle filter additive tank, this warning lamp comes on fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a warning message.

Topping up

This additive must be topped up without delay by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine.
Otherwise, have them checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Only use products recommended by PEUGEOT or products of equivalent quality and specification.
In order to optimise the operation of components as important as those in the braking system, PEUGEOT selects and offers very specific products.

12 V battery

The battery does not require any maintenance.
However, check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

i For more information on the precautions to take before any work on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification.
Its replacement should be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Air filter

Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary**.

Passenger compartment filter

Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary**.

i A clogged passenger compartment filter can adversely affect air conditioning system performance and generate undesirable odours.

Oil filter

Change the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Particle filter (Diesel)

When the particle filter is approaching saturation, this warning lamp comes on temporarily, accompanied by a message warning of the risk of the filter clogging.
As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 37 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.

i If the warning lamp stays on, this indicates a low Diesel additive level.
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

i Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice water vapour coming from the exhaust while accelerating. These emissions have no

impact on the vehicle's behaviour and the environment.

New vehicle
During the first few particle filter regeneration operations, you may notice a "burning" smell. This is perfectly normal.

Manual gearbox

The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Automatic gearbox

The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Manual parking brake

If you notice excessive brake lever travel or decreased effectiveness, the parking brake must be adjusted, even between two services.
This system must be checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electric parking brake

This system does not require any routine servicing. However, in the event of a problem, do not hesitate to have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

For more information on the **Electric parking brake**, refer to the corresponding section.

Brake pads

Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.
Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

After washing the vehicle, moisture, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Gently dab the brakes to dry and defrost them.

Brake disc/drum wear

For any information on checking brake disc/drum wear, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Wheels and tyres

The inflation pressure of all tyres, including the spare wheel, must be checked on "cold" tyres.
The pressures indicated on the tyre pressure label are valid for "cold" tyres. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 6 miles (10 kilometres) at over 31 mph (50 km/h), add 0.3 bar (30 kPa) to the values indicated on the label.

Under-inflation increases fuel consumption. Non-compliant tyre pressure causes premature wear on tyres and has an adverse effect on the vehicle's road holding - risk of an accident!

Driving with worn or damaged tyres reduces the braking and road holding performance of the vehicle. It is recommended to regularly check the condition of the tyres (tread and sidewalls) and wheel rims as well as the presence of the valves.
When the wear indicators no longer appear set back from the tread, the depth of the grooves is less than 1.6 mm; it is imperative to replace the tyres.
Using different size wheels and tyres from those specified can affect the lifetime of tyres, wheel rotation, ground clearance, the speedometer reading and have an adverse effect on road holding.
Fitting different tyres on the front and rear axles can cause the ESC to mistime.

Shock absorbers

It is not easy for drivers to detect when shock absorbers are worn. Nevertheless, the shock absorbers have a major impact on road-holding and braking performance.

For your safety and driving comfort, it is important to have them regularly checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Only use products recommended by PEUGEOT or products of equivalent quality and specification.
In order to optimise the operation of components as important as those in the braking system, PEUGEOT selects and offers very specific products.
After washing the vehicle, dampness, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Make light brake applications to dry and defrost the brakes.

AdBlue® (BlueHDi)

To respect the environment and ensure compliance with the Euro 6 standard, without adversely affecting the performance or fuel consumption of its Diesel engines, PEUGEOT has taken the decision to equip its vehicles with a system that associates SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) with a Diesel Particle Filter (DPF) for the treatment of exhaust gases.

SCR system

Using a liquid called AdBlue® that contains urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of the nitrogen oxides (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.

The AdBlue® is contained in **a special tank** holding about 17 litres.
Its capacity allows a driving range of approximately 4,000 miles (6,500 km), **which may vary considerably** depending on your driving style.
An alert system is triggered once the reserve level is reached: it is then possible to drive for a further 1,500 miles (2,400 km) before the tank is empty and the vehicle is immobilised.

i For more information on the **Warning and indicator lamps** and the associated alerts, or the **Indicators**, please refer to the corresponding sections.

! Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a device required by law prevents the engine from being restarted.
If the SCR system is faulty, the level of emissions from the vehicle will no longer meet the Euro 6 standard and the vehicle starts polluting the environment.
In the event of a confirmed SCR system malfunction, it is essential to visit a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
After 685 miles (1,100 km), a device is automatically activated to prevent the engine from starting.

In both cases, a range indicator indicates the distance that can be travelled before the vehicle is stopped.

i **Freezing of the AdBlue®**
AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below around -11°C.
The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in very cold conditions.

Supply of AdBlue®

It is recommended that the AdBlue® be topped up as soon as the first alert is issued indicating that the reserve level has been reached.

! For the correct operation of the SCR system:
– Use only AdBlue® fluid that meets the ISO 22241 standard.
– Never transfer AdBlue® to another container as it would lose its purity.
– Never dilute AdBlue® with water.

You can obtain AdBlue® from a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i You can also visit a service station equipped with AdBlue® pumps specially designed for passenger vehicles (for versions with access to the AdBlue® tank via the fuel filler flap).

! Never top up from an AdBlue® dispenser reserved for heavy goods vehicles.

Storage recommendations

AdBlue® freezes at about -11°C and deteriorates above +25°C. Containers should be stored in a cool area and protected from direct sunlight. Under these conditions, the fluid can be kept for at least a year.
If the fluid has frozen, it can be used once it has completely thawed out in the ambient air.

! Never store AdBlue® containers in your vehicle.

Precautions for use

AdBlue® is a urea-based solution. This fluid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (when kept in a cool place).
In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and running water. In the event of contact with the eyes, immediately rinse the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes. Seek medical attention if you feel a persistent burning sensation or irritation.
If swallowed, immediately wash out the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water.
In certain conditions (high temperature, for example), the risk of release of ammonia cannot be excluded: do not inhale the fluid. Ammonia vapours have an irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).

! Store AdBlue® out of the reach of children, in its original container.

Procedure

Before starting the top-up procedure, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface. In wintry conditions, ensure that the temperature of the vehicle is above -11°C. Otherwise the AdBlue® may be frozen and so cannot be poured into the tank. Park the vehicle in a warmer area for a few hours to allow the top-up to be carried out.

! Never pour the AdBlue® into the Diesel fuel tank.

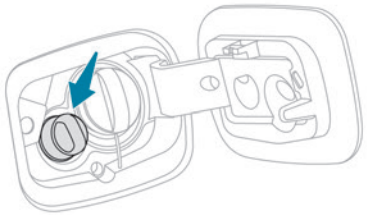
i For specific information about how to access the AdBlue tank, refer to the detailed descriptions below.

! If any AdBlue® is splashed, or if there are any spillages on the bodywork, rinse immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth.
If the fluid has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

! Important: **in the event of a top-up after a breakdown because of a lack of AdBlue,** it is essential to wait around 5 minutes before switching on the ignition, **without opening the driver's door, unlocking the vehicle, introducing the key into the ignition switch, or introducing the key of the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system into the passenger compartment**. Switch on the ignition, then wait for 10 seconds before starting the engine.

Access to the AdBlue®

A blue cap under the fuel filler flap indicates access to the AdBlue® tank.



– Switch off the ignition and remove the key.
► Turn the AdBlue® tank's blue filler cap anti-clockwise.
► Obtain an AdBlue® container (check the use-by date) and pour the contents of the container into your vehicle's AdBlue® tank.

Or

► Insert the AdBlue® pump nozzle and refill the tank until the nozzle stops automatically.

! Important:
To avoid overfilling the AdBlue® tank, it is recommended:
► To top up between 10 and 13 litres using AdBlue® containers.
Or
► When filling at a service station, to stop after the third automatic cut-off of the nozzle.

Free-wheeling

In certain situations, you must allow the vehicle to free-wheel (while being towed, on a rolling road, in an automatic car wash, or being transported by rail or sea freight, etc.).
The procedure varies according to the type of gearbox and parking brake.

With a manual gearbox and electric parking brake

Release procedure

► With the engine running and while depressing the brake pedal, move the gear selector to the neutral position.
► While depressing the brake pedal, switch off the ignition.
► Release the brake pedal, then switch on the ignition again.
► While depressing the brake pedal, press the control lever to release the parking brake.
► Release the brake pedal, then switch off the ignition.

Reverting to normal operation

► While depressing the brake pedal, start the engine.

With an automatic gearbox and electric parking brake

Release procedure

► With the vehicle stationary and the engine running, select mode **N** and switch off the ignition.
Within 5 seconds:
► Switch on the ignition again.
► While depressing the brake pedal, move the push selector forwards or backwards to confirm mode **N**.
► While depressing the brake pedal, press the control lever to release the parking brake.
► Release the brake pedal, switch off the ignition.
If the 5-second time limit is exceeded, the gearbox engages mode **P**; it is then necessary to restart the procedure.

Reverting to normal operation

► While depressing the brake pedal, restart the engine.

i **Keyless Entry and Starting**
You must not depress the brake pedal while switching the ignition on or off. If you do, the engine will start, requiring you to restart the procedure.

Advice on care and maintenance

General recommendations

Observe the following recommendations to avoid damaging the vehicle.

Exterior

! Never use a high-pressure jet wash in the engine compartment - risk of damaging the electrical components!
Do not wash the vehicle in bright sunshine or extremely cold conditions.

i When washing the vehicle in an automatic roller-brush car wash, be sure to lock the doors and, depending on version, move the electronic key away and deactivate

the “hands-free” function (“Hands-Free Tailgate Access”).
When using a pressure washer, hold the lance at least 30 cm from the vehicle (particularly when cleaning areas containing chipped paint, sensors or seals).
Promptly clean up any stains containing chemicals liable to damage the vehicle's paint (including tree resin, bird droppings, insect secretions, pollen and tar).
If justified by the environment, clean the vehicle more frequently to remove salty deposits (in coastal areas), soot (in industrial areas) and mud (in wet or cold areas). These substances can be highly corrosive.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for advice on removing stubborn stains requiring special products (such as tar or insect removers).
Preferably, have paint touch-ups performed by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Interior

! When washing the vehicle, never use a water hose or high-pressure jet to clean the interior.
Liquids carried in cups or other open containers can spill, presenting a risk of damage if they come into contact with the controls in the dashboard and centre console. Be vigilant!

Bodywork

High-gloss paint

! Do not use abrasive products or solvents, petrol or oil to clean the bodywork.
Never use an abrasive sponge to clean stubborn stains. Risk of scratching the paintwork!
Do not apply polish in strong sunshine, or to plastic or rubber parts.

i Use a soft sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product.
Gently wipe the bodywork with a clean microfibre cloth.
Apply polish with the vehicle clean and dry.
Comply with the instructions for use stated on the product.

Decals

(Depending on version)

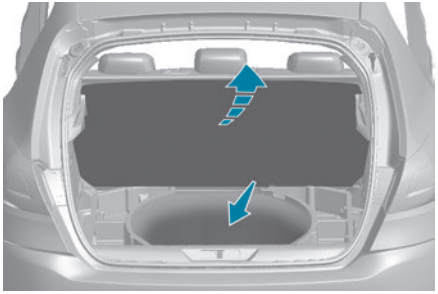
! Do not use a high pressure washer to clean the vehicle. Risk of damaging or detaching the decals!

i Use a high-flow hose at a temperature between 25°C and 40°C.
Sweep the jet of water across the surface to be cleaned, perpendicular to it.
Rinse the vehicle with demineralised water.

Tool kit

This is a set of tools provided with the vehicle.
Its content depends on your vehicle's equipment:
– temporary puncture repair kit,
– spare wheel.

Accessing the tools



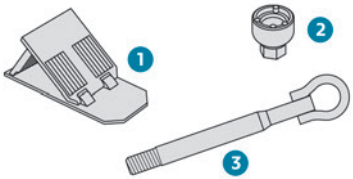
The tools are stored in the boot under the floor.

! All of these tools are specific to your vehicle and may vary depending on equipment.
Do not use them for any other purposes.

! The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre.
Do not use any jack other than the one supplied with this vehicle.
If the vehicle does not have its original jack, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the correct jack for it.

The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/CE.
The jack does not require any maintenance.

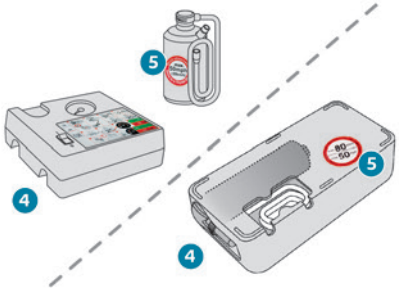
List of tools



1. Chock to immobilise the vehicle (depending on equipment)
2. Socket for the wheel security bolts (located in the glove box) (depending on equipment)
   To adapt the wheelbrace to the special ‘security’ bolts.
3. Removable towing eye

For more information on **Towing the vehicle** and using the removable towing eye, refer to the corresponding section.

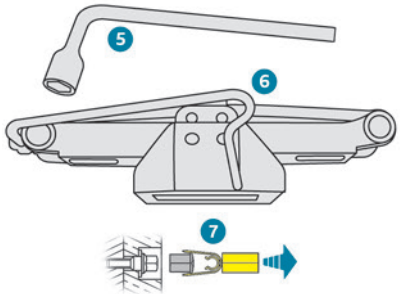
With temporary puncture repair kit



4. Temporary puncture repair kit (depending on equipment)
   Includes a 12 V compressor and a cartridge of sealant
   For temporary repair of a tyre and to adjust the tyre pressure.
5. Speed limit sticker

For more information about the **Temporary puncture repair kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

With spare wheel



5. Wheelbrace
   For removing the wheel trim and the wheel bolts.
6. Jack with integrated handle
   To raise the vehicle.
7. Wheel bolt cap removal tool (depending on equipment)
   For removing the wheel bolt head finishers on alloy wheels.

For more information on the **Spare wheel**, refer to the corresponding section.

Temporary puncture repair kit

(Type 1)

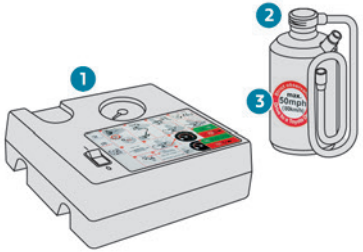
> Scan the QR Code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

Made up of a compressor and a sealant cartridge, it allows you to carry out a **temporary repair** of the tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.
It is designed to repair most punctures located on the tyre tread.

> The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of the compressor for long enough to inflate a tyre after a puncture repair.

> For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

Composition of the kit

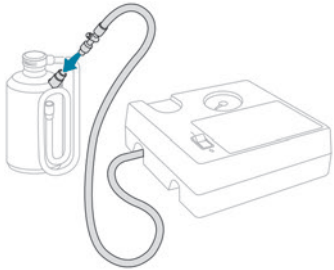


1. 12 V compressor, with integral pressure gauge.
2. Sealant cartridge, with integral hose.
3. Speed limit sticker.

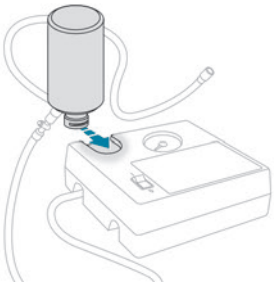
Repair procedure

> Do not remove any foreign bodies (e.g. nail, screw) which have penetrated into the tyre.

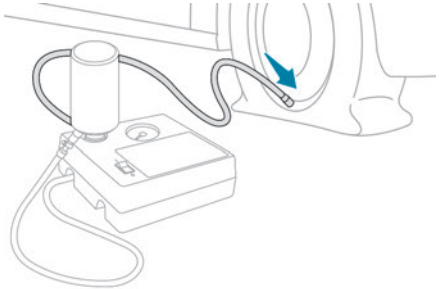
► Park the vehicle without obstructing traffic and apply the parking brake.
► Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lamps, warning triangle, high visibility jacket, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.
► Switch the ignition off.
► Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.



► Connect the pipe from the compressor to the bottle of sealant.



► Turn the bottle of sealant over and secure it in the notch provided on the compressor.
► Remove the valve cap from the tyre to be repaired, and place it in a clean place.



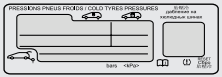
► Connect the hose from the bottle of sealant to the valve of the tyre to be repaired and tighten firmly.
► Check that the compressor switch is in position "**O**".
► Fully uncoil the electric cable stowed under the compressor.
► Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.

! Only the 12 V socket located **at the front** of the vehicle can be used to **power the compressor**.

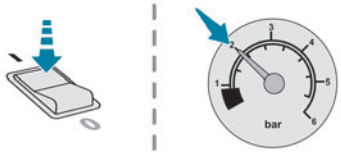
► Affix the speed limit sticker.

! The speed limit sticker must be affixed inside the vehicle in the area close to the driver, to remind them that a wheel is in temporary use.

i Tyre inflation pressures are indicated on this label.



► Switch the ignition on.

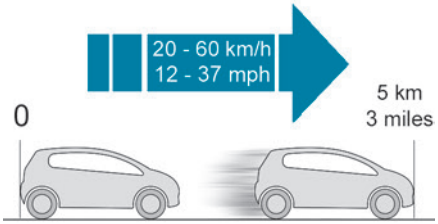


► Switch on the compressor by moving the switch to position "**I**" until the tyre pressure reaches 2 bar. The sealant product is injected under pressure into the tyre; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of blowback).

! If after approximately 7 minutes, the pressure of 2 bar is not reached, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

► Move the switch to position "**O**".
► Disconnect the compressor's electric plug from the vehicle's 12 V socket.
► Remove the kit.
► Refit the cap on the valve.
► Remove and store the bottle of sealant.

! The sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.
Keep this product out of the reach of children.
The use-by date of the fluid is marked on the bottle.
After use, do not discard the bottle in standard waste, take it to a PEUGEOT dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.
Do not forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant, available from a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



► Drive immediately for approximately 3 miles (5 kilometres) at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph (20 and 60 km/h)) to plug the puncture.
► Stop to check the repair **and the tyre pressure** using the kit.

! With a tyre repaired using this type of kit, do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) and do not drive more than 125 miles (200 km).
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the tyre changed.

Checking/adjusting tyre pressures

The compressor can be used, **without injecting sealant**, to check and, if necessary, adjust the tyre pressures.
► Remove the valve cap from the tyre and keep it in a clean place.
► Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.
► Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.
► Check that the compressor switch is in position "**O**".
► Fully uncoil the electric cable stowed under the compressor.
► Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12V socket.
► Switch the ignition on.

! Only the 12V socket located **at the front** of the vehicle can be used to **power the compressor**.

► Start the compressor by placing the switch at position "**I**" and adjust the pressure to the value shown on the vehicle's tyre pressure label. To deflate: press the black button located on the compressor pipe, near the valve connection.

! If after 7 minutes the pressure of 2 bar is not reached, the tyre is damaged; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

► Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch in position "**O**".
► Remove the kit and stow it.
► Refit the cap on the valve.

! Should the pressure of one or more tyres be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system.
For more information on **Tyre under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

Temporary puncture repair kit

(Type 2)

i Scan the QR Code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

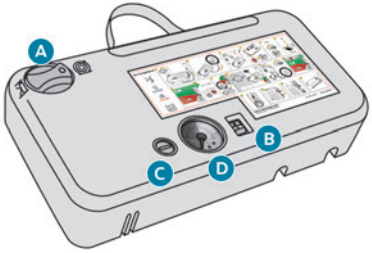
Made up of a compressor and a sealant cartridge, it allows you to carry out a **temporary repair** of the tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.
It is designed to repair most punctures located on the tyre tread.

i The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of the compressor for long

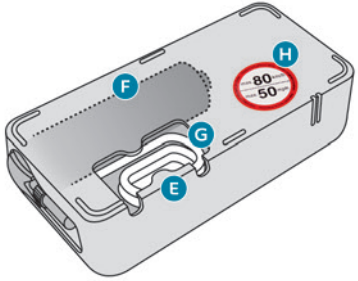
enough to inflate a tyre after a puncture repair.

For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

Composition of the kit



A. "Repair" or "Inflation" position selector.
B. On **I** / off **O** switch.
C. Deflation button.
D. Pressure gauge (in bars and psi).



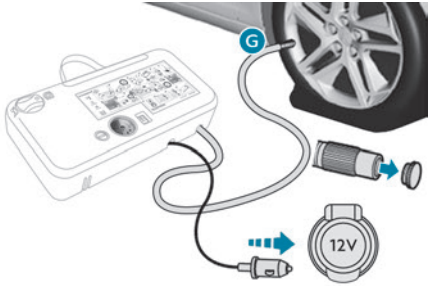
E. Compartment housing a cable with an adaptor for a 12V socket.
F. Sealant cartridge.
G. White pipe with cap for repair and inflation.
H. Speed limit sticker.

Repair procedure

1. Sealing

► Park the vehicle without obstructing traffic and apply the parking brake.
► Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lamps, warning triangle, wearing high visibility vest, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.
► Switch the ignition off.
► Turn selector **A** to the "Repair" position.
► Check that switch **B** is in position **"O"**.

Avoid removing any foreign bodies which may have penetrated the tyre.



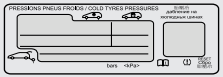
► Uncoil the white pipe **G** fully.
► Unscrew the cap from the white pipe.
► Connect the white pipe to the valve of the tyre to be repaired.
► Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12V socket.

Only the 12V socket located at the **front** of the vehicle can be used.

► Affix the speed limit sticker.

The speed limit sticker must be secured to the interior of the vehicle in the driver's field of vision, to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.

Tyre inflation pressures are indicated on this label.



► Start the vehicle and leave the engine running.

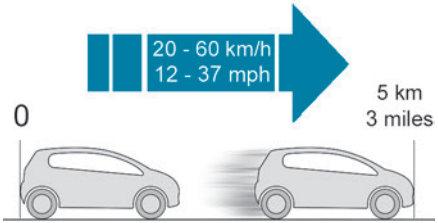
Do not start the compressor before connecting the white pipe to the tyre valve: this would cause the sealant product to be expelled through the pipe.

► Switch on the compressor by moving switch **B** to position **I** and inflate the tyre until its pressure reaches 2.0 bars. The sealant product is injected under pressure into the tyre; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of blowback).

If, after approximately seven minutes, this pressure is not reached, this indicates that the tyre is irreparable; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

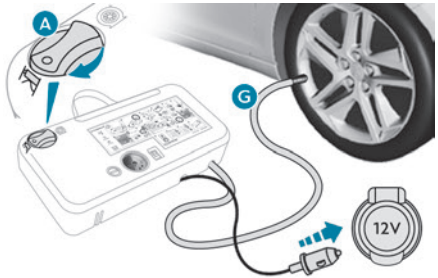
► Remove the kit and screw the cap back on to the white pipe. Be careful not to leave traces of fluid on your vehicle. Keep the kit within reach.

Please note, the sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.
Keep this product out of the reach of children.



► Drive immediately for approximately 3 miles (5 kilometres) at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph (20 and 60 km/h)) to plug the puncture.
► Stop to check the repair **and the tyre pressure** using the kit.

2. Inflation

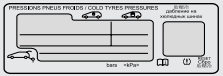


► Turn selector **A** to the "Inflation" position.
► Uncoil the white pipe **G** fully.

► Connect the white pipe to the valve on the repaired tyre.
► Reconnect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12V socket.

Only the 12V socket located at the **front** of the vehicle can be used.

Tyre inflation pressures are indicated on this label.



► Restart the vehicle and leave the engine running.

Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
You must inform the technician that you have used this kit. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

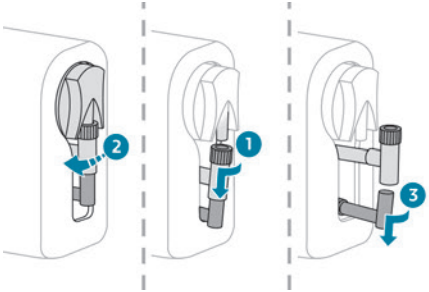
► Adjust the tyre pressure using the compressor (to inflate: set switch **B** to position **I**; to deflate: set switch **B** to position **O** and press button **C**), following the vehicle's tyre pressure label located by the driver's door.

A subsequent loss of pressure indicates that the puncture has not been fully sealed; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have your vehicle repaired.

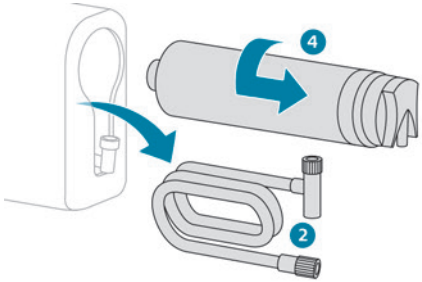
► Remove the kit and stow it.

! Drive at reduced speed (50 mph (80 km/h) max.), limiting the distance travelled to approximately 125 miles (200 km).

Removing the pipe and cartridge



► Turn the pipe assembly **2** to the left until it comes into contact with the unit.
► Disconnect the connector **1** from the cartridge by turning it a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
► Pull the pipe assembly **2** out slightly, then disconnect the connector **3** from the air intake pipe by turning it a quarter turn anti-clockwise.

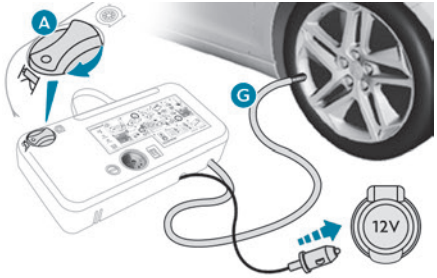


– Remove the pipe assembly **2**.
– Keep the compressor vertical.
– Unscrew the cartridge **4** from the bottom.
To fit the new cartridge and new pipe, carry out these operations in reverse order.

! Be careful of fluid discharge.
The expiry date of the fluid is indicated on the cartridge.
The sealant cartridge is designed for single use; it must be replaced even if only partly used.
After use, do not discard the cartridge into the environment, take it to an authorised waste disposal site or a PEUGEOT dealer.
Do not forget to obtain a new sealant cartridge, available from PEUGEOT dealers or from a qualified workshop.

Checking/adjusting tyre pressures

i Use the compressor, without injecting any sealant, to check and, if necessary, adjust the tyre pressures.

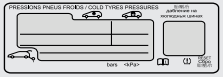


► Turn selector **A** to the "Inflation" position.
► Uncoil the white pipe **G** fully.
► Connect the pipe to the tyre valve.
► Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12V socket.

! Only the 12V socket located at the **front** of the vehicle can be used.

► Restart the vehicle and leave the engine running.

Tyre inflation pressures are indicated on this label.



► Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: set switch **B** to position "**I**"; to deflate: set switch **B** to position "**O**" and press button **C**), following the vehicle's tyre pressure label.

If, after approximately seven minutes, this pressure is not reached, this indicates that the tyre is irreparable; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

► Remove the kit and stow it.

Do not drive more than 125 miles (200 km) with a repaired tyre; see a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the tyre changed.

Should the pressure of one or more tyres be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system.
For more information on **Tyre under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

Spare wheel

Scan the QR Code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre.
The jack does not require any maintenance.
The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC.

Some parts of the jack such as the screws and hinges could cause injury: avoid touching them.
Carefully remove any traces of grease.

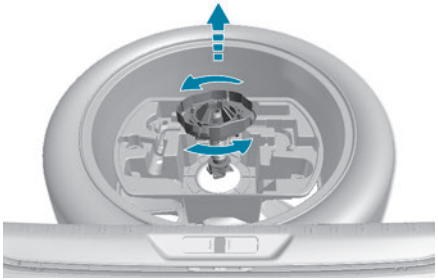
Wheel with wheel trim
When refitting the wheel, refit the wheel trim, starting by aligning the cutout with the valve and then pushing the trim into place all round its edge with the palm of your hand.

► Park the vehicle without obstructing any traffic and apply the parking brake.
► Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lamps, warning triangle, wearing high visibility vest, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.
► Switch off the ignition.

Accessing the spare wheel

The spare wheel is stored in the boot, under the floor.
Depending on the country of sale, the spare wheel may be steel, alloy or of the "space-saver" type.
To access the spare wheel, first refer to the **Tool kit** section.

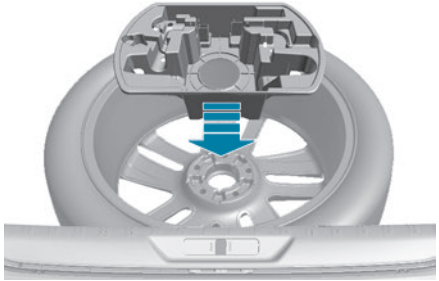
Taking out the wheel



► Unscrew the (coloured) central nut.
► Remove the fastening device (nut and bolt).
► Lift the spare wheel towards you from the rear.
► Take the wheel out of the boot.

Putting the wheel back in place

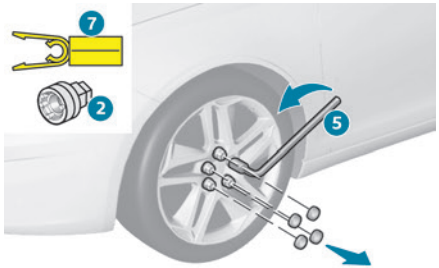
► Put the wheel back in place in its housing.
► Give the (coloured) nut on the bolt a few turns to loosen it,
► Position the fastening device (nut and bolt) in the middle of the wheel.
► Tighten fully until the central nut clicks to retain the wheel correctly.

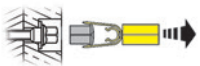


► Put the support box back in place in the centre of the wheel and clip it.
► Put the polystyrene storage box back in place.

Removing the wheel

Parking the vehicle
Immobilise the vehicle where it does not block traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery.
With a manual parking brake, apply the parking brake and check that the brake warning lamp is on.
With an electric parking brake, if not set to automatic mode, apply the parking brake and check that the brake warning lamp and the **P** indicator lamp on the parking brake control lever are on.
Switch off the ignition.
With a manual gearbox, engage first gear to lock the wheels.
With an automatic gearbox, place the selector at position **P** to lock the wheels.
You must ensure that the occupants have left the vehicle and are located in a safe place.
Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

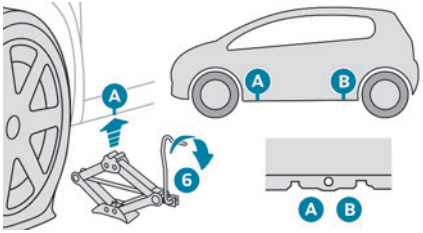




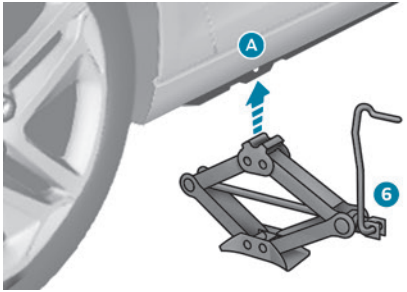
► Remove the bolt cover(s) using the tool **7** (according to equipment).
► Fit the anti-theft socket **2** on to the wheelbrace **5** in order to loosen the anti-theft bolt (where fitted).
► Loosen the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.

Do not use:
– the jack for any other purpose than lifting the vehicle,

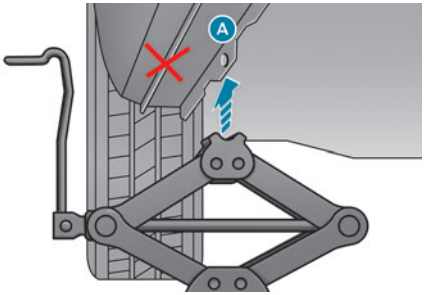
– a jack other than the one supplied by the manufacturer.



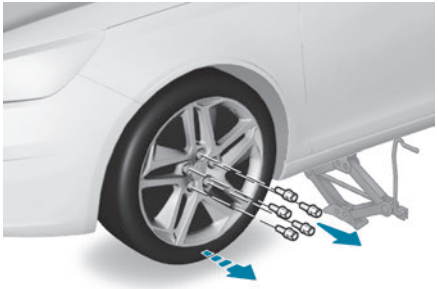
► Place the foot of the jack on the ground and ensure that it is directly below jacking points **A** or **B** located on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.



► Extend the jack **6** until its head comes into contact with jacking point **A** or **B**, whichever is to be used; the contact area **A** or **B** on the vehicle must be fit correctly into the central part of the head of the jack.



► Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to allow the spare (not punctured) wheel to be easily fitted.

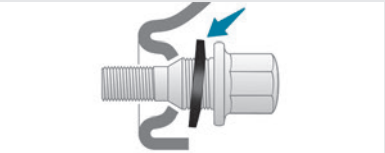


– Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
– Remove the wheel.

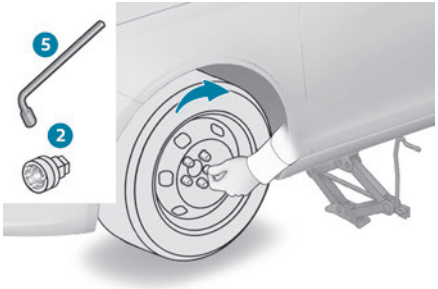
! Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or collapse - risk of injury!
Ensure that the jack is positioned strictly at one of the jacking points **A** or **B** under the vehicle, making sure that the vehicle's contact surface is correctly centred on the head of the jack. Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or of the jack collapsing - risk of injury!

Fitting the wheel

i **Fitting the "space-saver" spare wheel**

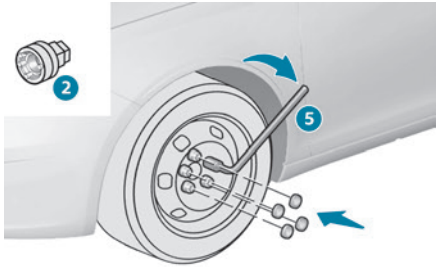


If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, when tightening the bolts on fitting, it is normal to notice that the washers do not come into contact with the "space-saver" spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.



► Put the wheel in place on the hub.
► Screw in the bolts by hand as far as possible.
► Pre-tighten the anti-theft bolt using the wheelbrace **5** fitted with the anti-theft socket **2** (according to equipment).
► Pre-tighten the other bolts using wheelbrace **5** only.

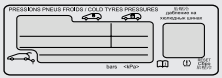
► Lower the vehicle again fully.
► Unwind jack **6** to lower and detach it.



► Tighten the anti-theft bolt using the wheelbrace **5** fitted with the anti-theft socket **2** (according to equipment).
► Tighten the other bolts using wheelbrace **5** only.
► Refit the bolt cover(s) (depending on version).
► Store the tools in the support box.

After changing a wheel
To store the punctured wheel in the boot correctly, first remove the central cover.
When using the "space-saver" type spare wheel, do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
Have the tightening of the bolts and the pressure of the spare wheel checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.
Have the punctured wheel repaired and replace it on the vehicle as soon as possible.
If your vehicle has tyre under-inflation detection, check the tyre pressures and reinitialise the system.
For more information on **Tyre under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

Tyre inflation pressures are indicated on this label.
For more information on **Identification markings**, particularly this label, refer to the corresponding section.



Changing a bulb

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps

and rear lamps is normal, and will disappear after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

! The headlamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:
– **Do not clean them with a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with detergent or solvent products.**
– Use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product.
– When using a high-pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the headlamps, lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

! Changing a bulb must only be done with the ignition off and after the headlamp / lamp has been switched off for several minutes - risk of serious burns!
Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers; use a lint-free cloth.
It is essential only to use anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs, so as not to damage the headlamp.
Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb of the same type and specification. To avoid lighting imbalance, replace the bulbs in pairs.

i **Refitting the lamp units**
Perform the operations in the reverse order to dismantling.

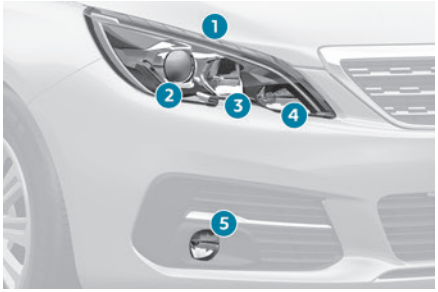
Light-emitting diode (LED) headlamps and lamps

Depending on version, the affected types of headlamps/lamps are:
– Full LED technology headlamps.
– Daytime running lamps/sidelamps.
– Direction indicator side repeaters.
– Side spotlamps.
– Third brake lamp.
– Rear sidelamps.

! If you need to replace this type of bulb, you must contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Do not touch LED or Full LED technology headlamps - risk of electrocution!

Front lamps

With halogen headlamps



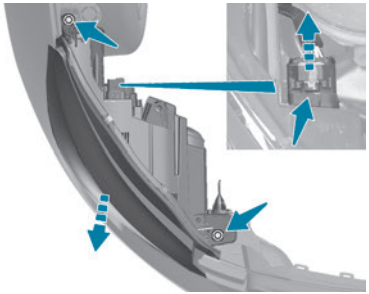
1. Daytime running lamps/Sidelamps (LED).
2. Dipped beam headlamps (H7).
3. Main beam headlamps (H7).
4. Direction indicators (PY21W).
5. Front foglamps (H11).

With "full LED" technology headlamps

1. Daytime running lamps/Sidelamps (LED).
2. Dipped beam headlamps (LED).
3. Main beam headlamps (LED).
4. Direction indicators (LED).
5. Front foglamps (H11).

Access to front lamps (halogen model)

Opening the bonnet/Access to bulbs
Proceed with caution when the engine is hot - risk of burns!
Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the cooling fan - risk of strangulation!



To facilitate access to the front lamps, the headlamp assembly must first be moved forward a few centimetres:

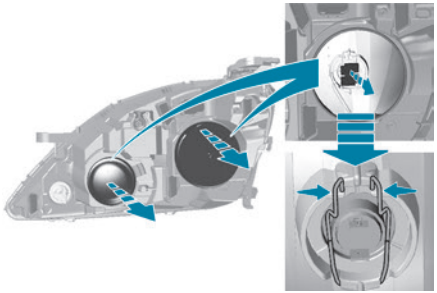
► Move the orange clip towards the rear then while pressing on the black part (located above the orange clip), pull on the connector.

► Remove the two screws that hold the lamp unit in place.

► Disengage the rear pin then the front centring piece.

► Move the lamp unit forwards.

Dipped beam headlamps/Main beam headlamps (halogen model)



► Remove the protective plastic cover by pulling the tab.

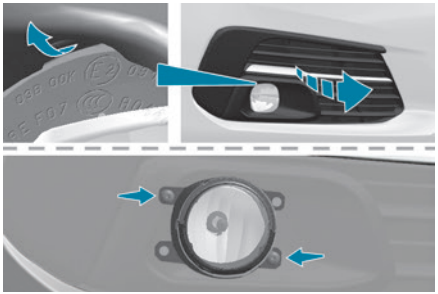
► Disconnect the bulb connector.

► Detach the two springs (press then remove towards the outside).

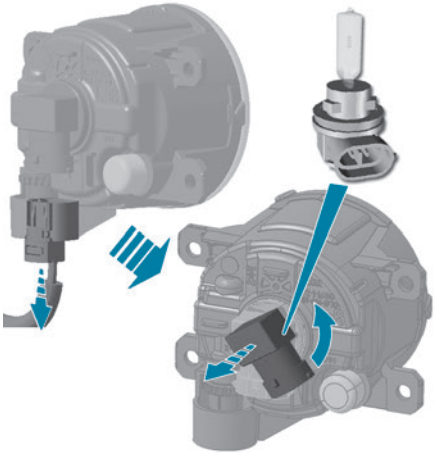
► Pull out the bulb and replace it.

The zone behind the right-hand lamp may reach a high temperature (degassing hoses nearby): risk of burns.

Front foglamps

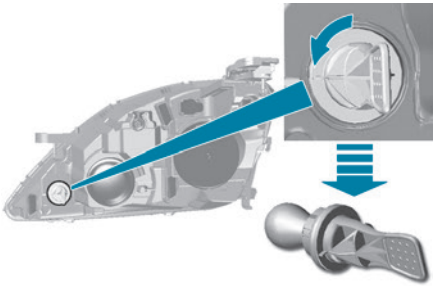


► Unclip the trim by pulling at the top (notch).
► Unscrew the 2 screws to remove the unit from its housing.



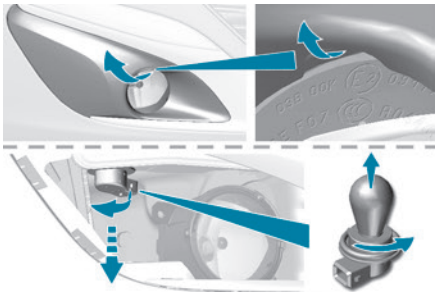
► Disconnect the connector.
► Unscrew the bulb holder ¼ of a turn.
► Remove the bulb holder.
► Replace the bulb.

Direction indicators (halogen model)



► Unscrew the bulb holder ¼ of a turn.
► Remove the bulb holder.
► Replace the bulb.

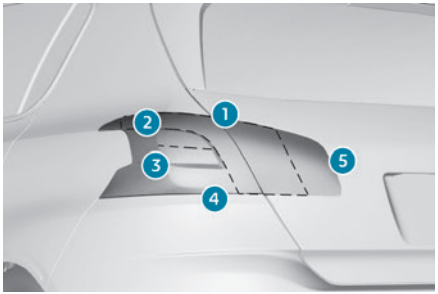
ℹ Rapid flashing of a direction indicator lamp (left or right) indicates that one of the bulbs on the corresponding side has failed.



The direction indicator bulb is located below the front lamp.

► Unclip the trim by pulling at the top (notch).
► Unscrew the bulb holder ¼ of a turn.
► Replace the bulb.

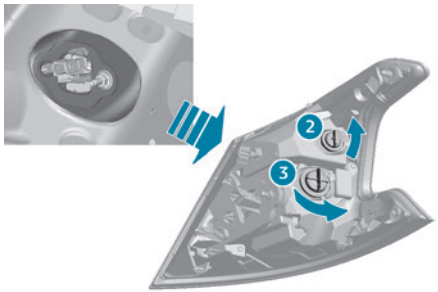
Rear lamps (hatchback)



1. Sidelamps (light-emitting diodes - LEDs).
2. Reversing lamps (W16W).
3. Direction indicators (PY-21W amber).
4. Brake lamps (light-emitting diodes - LEDs).
5. Foglamps (P21W).

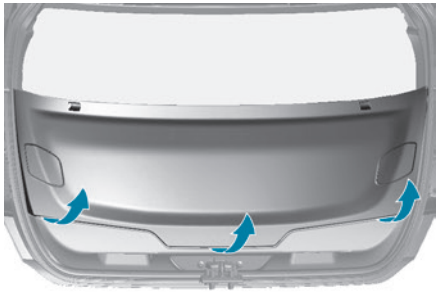
Reversing lamps, direction indicators (on the wings)

► Open the tailgate and then remove the access cover.

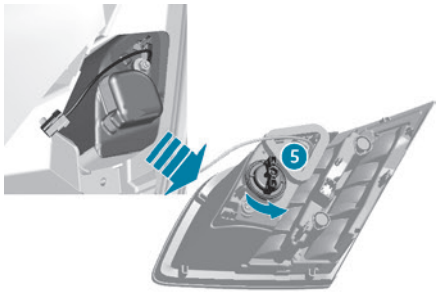


► Disconnect the lamp unit connector.
► Remove the lamp fixing nut.
► Extract the lamp unit carefully from the outside.
► Unscrew the bulb holder ¼ of a turn and replace the bulb.

Foglamps (tailgate)



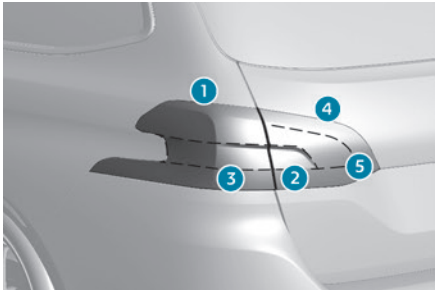
► Open the tailgate then remove the large plastic cover.



► Unclip the 2 access covers, left and right.
► Unscrew the screws located in each opening.
► Unclip the boot trim to access the lamp unit connector.
► Disconnect the lamp unit connector.
► Remove the lamp unit fixing nut.

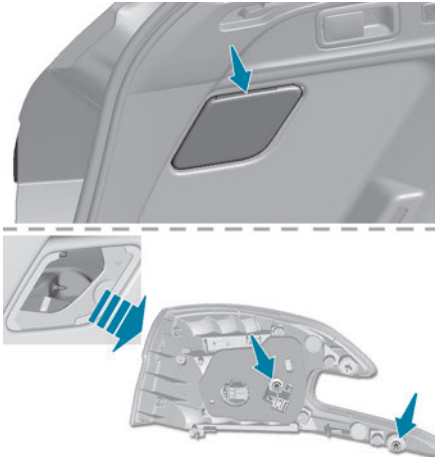
► Extract the lamp unit carefully from the outside.
► Unscrew the bulb holder ¼ of a turn and replace the bulb.

Rear lamps (SW)

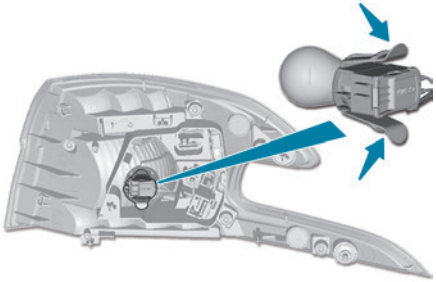


1. Sidelamps (light emitting diodes - LEDs).
2. Direction indicators (PY-21W amber).
3. Brake lamps (light emitting diodes - LEDs).
4. Reversing lamps (W16W).
5. Foglamps (P21W).

Direction indicators (on the wings)

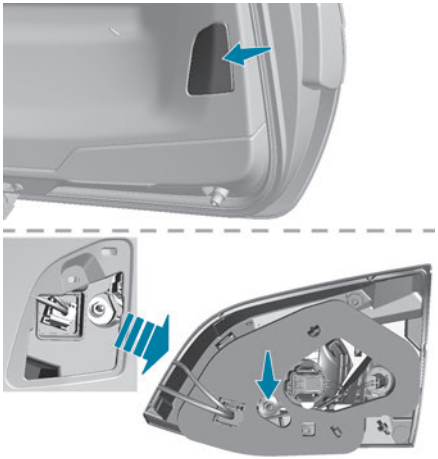


► Open the tailgate and then remove the access cover.
► Remove the 2 lamp unit fixing nuts (pipe wrench recommended).
► Unclip the pre-retaining clip, carefully removing the lamp unit from the outside as you do so.

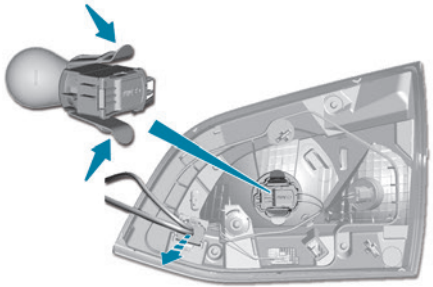


► Disconnect the lamp unit connector.
► Remove the sealing foam.
► Unclip the bulb holder by pressing the 2 tabs.
► Replace the bulb.

Reversing lamps, foglamp (tailgate)

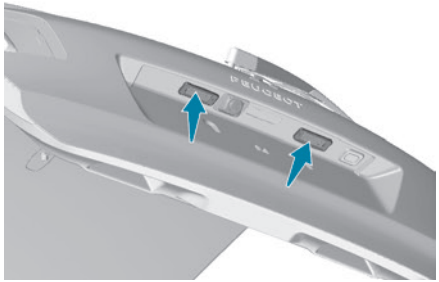


► Open the tailgate and then remove the access cover.
► Remove the lamp unit fixing nut.



► Extract the lamp unit carefully from the outside.
► Disconnect the lamp unit connector.
► Foglamp: unclip the bulb holder by pressing the 2 tabs, then replace the bulb.
► Reversing lamp: turn the bulb holder ¼ of a turn and then replace the bulb.

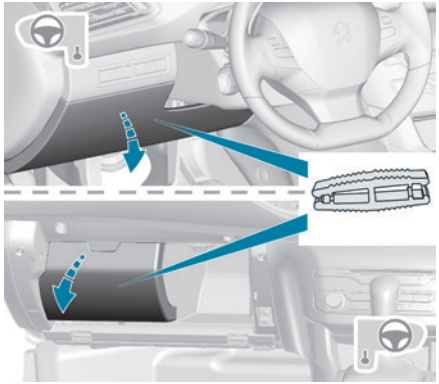
Number plate lamps (W5W)



► Insert a thin screwdriver into one of the cut-outs in the lens.
► Push it outwards to unclip it.
► Remove the lens.
► Replace the faulty bulb.
To refit, press the lens to clip it in.

Changing a fuse

Accessing the tools



The extraction tweezers are fitted to the back of the dashboard fusebox cover.
► Unclip the cover by pulling at the top left, then right.
► Disengage the cover fully and turn it over.
► Remove the tweezers from the back of the cover that they are fitted to.

Changing a fuse

Before changing a fuse:
► Identify the cause of the fault and fix it.
► Stop all power consumption.
► Immobilise the vehicle and switch the ignition off.

► Identify the defective fuse using the current allocation tables and diagrams.
To replace a fuse, it is essential to:
► Use the special tweezers to extract the fuse from its housing and check the condition of its filament.
► Always replace the failed fuse with a fuse of the same rating (same colour); use of a different rating may cause malfunctions - risk of fire!
If the fault recurs after replacing a fuse, have the electrical system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i The fuse allocation tables and the corresponding diagrams are available from a PEUGEOT dealer or from a qualified workshop.

! The replacement of a fuse not shown in the allocation tables may cause a serious malfunction of your vehicle. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Good	**Failed**
Tweezers	

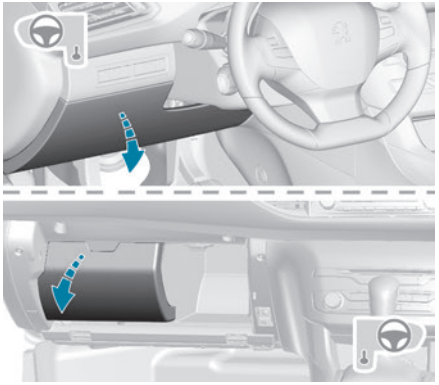
i **Installing electrical accessories**
Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.
Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! PEUGEOT will not accept responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended by PEUGEOT and not installed in accordance with its instructions, in particular when the combined consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

Fuses in the dashboard

The fusebox is located in the lower dashboard (left-hand side).

Accessing the fuses



► Unclip the cover by pulling at the top left, then right.

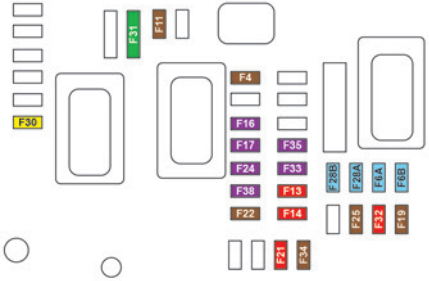
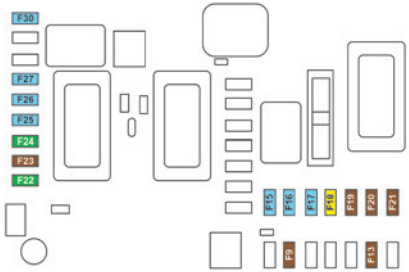


Table of fuses

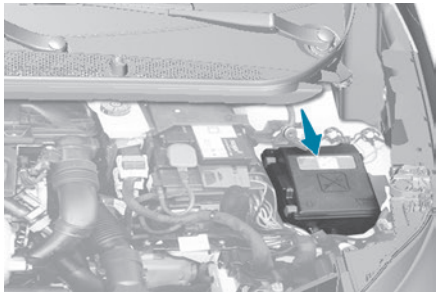
Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F9	5	Alarm, emergency and assistance calls.
F13	5	Reversing camera and parking sensors.
F15	15	12V accessory socket.
F16	15	Cigarette lighter.
F18	20	Touch screen, CD player, audio and navigation system.
F19	5	Rain, sunshine sensor.
F20	5	Airbags.
F21	5	Instrument panel.
F22/F24	30	Internal/ external locks, front and rear.
F23	5	Glove box lamp, courtesy mirror, front and rear courtesy lamps.
F25/F27	15	Front/rear screenwash pump.
F26	15	Horn.
F30	15	Rear wiper.



Fuses in the engine compartment

The fusebox is located in the engine compartment near the battery.

Accessing the fuses



► Unclip the cover.
► Change the fuse.
► After the operation, close the cover very carefully to ensure the fusebox is properly sealed.

Table of fuses

Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F13	5	Built-in systems interface.
F16	15	Front foglamps.
F18	10	Right-hand main beam headlamp.
F19	10	Left-hand main beam headlamp.

Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F25	40	Headlamp washer relay (retrofitting).
F27	25	Built-in systems interface.
F28	30	Diesel emissions control system (AdBlue®).
F29	30	Windscreen wiper motor.
F30	80	Pre-heat glow plugs (Diesel), additional programmable heating (retrofitting), headlamp wash pump.

12 V battery

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or charging a discharged battery.

Lead-acid starter batteries

These batteries contain harmful substances (sulphuric acid and lead).
They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must never under any circumstances be discarded with household waste.
Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.

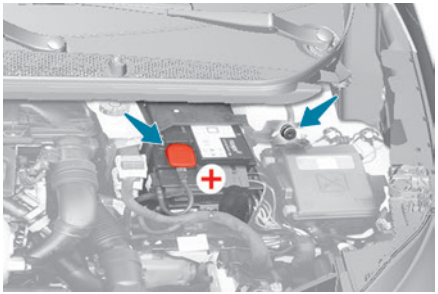
Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.
All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, to avoid any risk of explosion or fire.

Wash your hands afterwards.

Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery with special technology and specifications.
It should only be replaced by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Before doing any work
Immobilise the vehicle: apply the parking brake, put the gearbox in neutral, then switch off the ignition.
Check that all electrical equipment is switched off.

Access to the battery



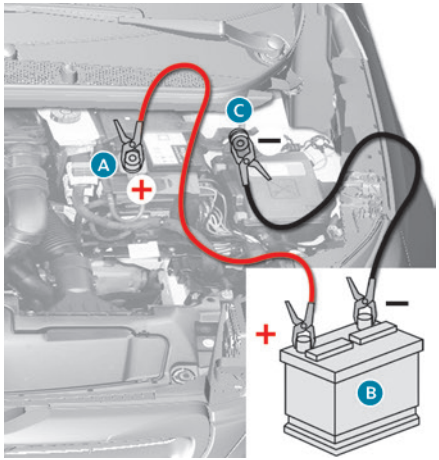
The battery is located under the bonnet.
To access them:
► Open the bonnet using the interior release lever, then the exterior safety catch.

► Secure the bonnet stay.
► Remove the plastic cover on the (+) terminal.
The battery (-) terminal is not accessible. A remote earth point is located on the engine.

Starting using another battery

If your vehicle's battery is flat, the engine can be started using a backup battery (either external or from another vehicle) and jump leads or using a battery booster.

! Never start the engine by connecting a battery charger.
Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.
Check beforehand that the backup battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.
The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.
Switch off all electricity-consuming equipment on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).
Make sure that the jump leads are well away from the engine's moving parts (fan, belt, etc.).
Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.



► Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
► Connect the red cable to the (+) terminal of flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow), then to the (+) terminal of the backup battery **B** or of the booster.
► Connect one end of the green or black cable to the (-) terminal of the backup battery **B** or of the booster (or to an earth point on the assisting vehicle).
► Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the earth point **C**.
► Start the engine on the assisting vehicle and leave it running for a few minutes.
► Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run.

If the engine does not start immediately, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.
► Wait for it to return to idle.
► Disconnect the jump leads **in reverse order**.
► Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
► Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

! Drive cautiously during the first 30 minutes after starting the engine.

! With an automatic gearbox, never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

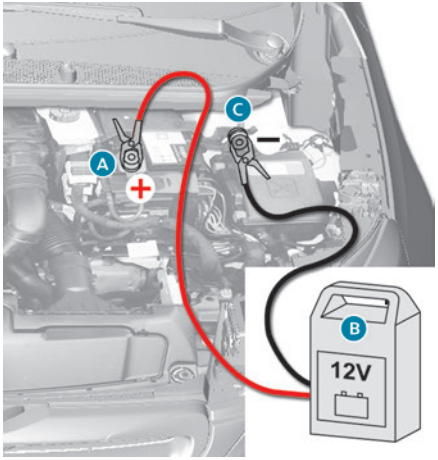
Charging the battery using a battery charger

For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.
In some circumstances, it may be necessary to charge the battery:
– When using the vehicle mainly for short journeys.
– If the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
Never reverse polarities.

i It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

► Switch the ignition off.
► Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).

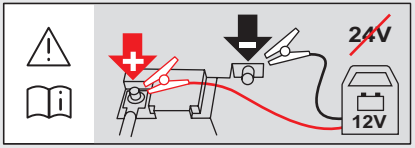


► Switch off charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
► Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.

► Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
► Connect the cables of charger **B** as follows:
- the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of battery **A**,
- the negative (-) black cable to earth point **C** on the vehicle.

► At the end of the charging operation, switch off charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from battery **A**.

! If this label is present, use only a 12 V charger to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components connected to the Stop & Start system.



! Never try to charge a frozen battery - risk of explosion!
If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or by a qualified workshop who will verify that the internal components have not been damaged and that the case has not cracked, which would mean a risk of toxic and corrosive acid leaking.

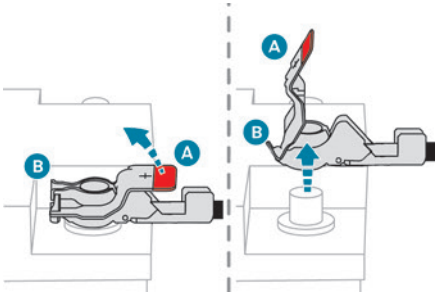
i The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start.
In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

Disconnecting the battery

In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, it is recommended that the battery be disconnected if the vehicle is taken out of service for a long period.
Before disconnecting the battery:
► Close all openings (doors, boot, windows, roof).
► Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).
► Switch off the ignition and wait for 4 minutes.
At the battery, it is only necessary to disconnect the (+) terminal.

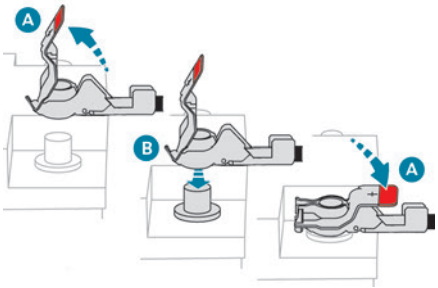
Quick-release terminal clamp

Disconnecting the (+) terminal



► Depending on equipment, lift the plastic cover on the **(+)** terminal.
► Raise lever **A** fully to release clamp **B**.
► Remove clamp **B** by lifting it off.

Reconnecting the (+) terminal



► Raise lever **A** fully.
► Refit the open clamp **B** on the **(+)** terminal.
► Push clamp **B** fully down.
► Lower lever **A** to lock clamp **B**.
► Depending on equipment, lower the plastic cover on the **(+)** terminal.

! Do not force the lever, as it will not lock in place if the clamp is not positioned correctly; start the procedure again.

Following reconnection

After reconnecting the battery, turn on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting the engine, to enable the electronic systems to initialise.
If minor problems nevertheless persist following this operation, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Referring to the relevant section, reinitialise certain equipment:
– Remote control key.
– Electric blind.
– Electric windows.
– Date and time.
– Preset radio stations.

i The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start.
In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

Towing the vehicle

General recommendations
Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.
Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.
The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.
When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towbar; ropes and straps are prohibited.
The towing vehicle must move off gently.
When the vehicle is towed with its engine off, there is no longer braking and steering assistance.

A professional recovery service must be called if:
– broken down on a motorway or main road;
– not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake;
– not possible to tow a vehicle with an automatic gearbox, with the engine running;
– towing with only two wheels on the ground;
– four-wheel drive vehicle;
– no approved towbar available.

	Towing constraints			
Type of vehicle (engine / gearbox)	**Front wheels on the ground**	**Rear wheels on the ground**	**Flatbed**	**4 wheels on the ground with towbar**
Internal combustion / Manual	✓	✓	✓	✓
Internal combustion / Automatic	✗	✓	✓	✗

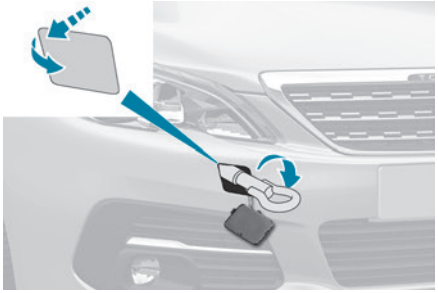
In case of battery or electric parking brake failure, it is essential to call a professional using flatbed recovery vehicles (excluding manual gearbox).

Accessing the tools

For more information on accessing the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

Towing your vehicle

To access the front screw thread:



► Slide a finger from the centre of the cover to the upper edge (as shown above) to unclip it.
To be towed:
► Screw the towing eye in fully.
► Install the towbar.
► Put the gearbox into neutral.

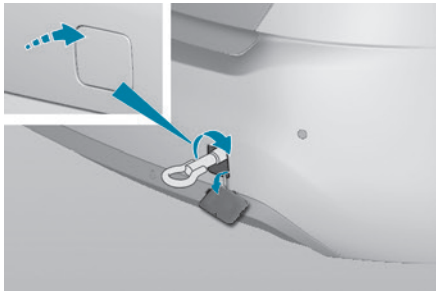
! Failure to observe this instruction could result in damage to certain components (braking, transmission, etc.) and to the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

! Automatic gearbox: never tow the vehicle with the driving wheels on the ground and the engine off.

► Unlock the steering and release the parking brake.
► Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
► Move off gently, drive slowly and only for a short distance.

Towing another vehicle

To access the rear screw thread:



► Unclip the cover by pressing at its left-hand section.
► Pull the cover downwards.
To tow:
► Screw the towing eye in fully.
► Install the towbar.
► Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
► Move off gently, drive slowly and only for a short distance.

Running out of fuel (Diesel)

On vehicles fitted with Diesel engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel.
For all versions other than BlueHDi, refer to the corresponding engine compartment view.

i For more information on **Diesel misfuel prevention**, refer to the corresponding section.

! If the engine does not start first time, do not keep trying, but start the procedure again from the beginning.

With BlueHDi 100 S&S BVM6 and BlueHDi 130 S&S engines

► Fill the fuel tank with at least 5 litres of Diesel.
► Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
► Wait around 1 minute and switch off the ignition.
► Operate the starter to start the engine.
If the engine does not start, repeat the procedure.

Other enginesNon-

► Fill the fuel tank with at least 5 litres of Diesel.
► Open the bonnet.
► If necessary, unclip the cover to access the priming pump.

► Operate the priming pump repeatedly until resistance is felt (there may be resistance on the first press).
► Operate the starter to start the engine (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
► If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again then start the engine.
► Put the cover back in place and clip it in.
► Close the bonnet.

Engine technical data and towed loads

Engines

The engine characteristics are given in the vehicle's registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Weights and towed loads

The weights and towed loads relating to the vehicle are indicated on the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.
These values are also indicated on the manufacturer's plate or label.
For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
The GTW (Gross Train Weight) and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres. The towed load value must be reduced by 10% for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude.
The maximum authorised nose weight corresponds to the weight permitted on the towball.

When exterior temperatures are high, the vehicle performance may be limited in order to protect the engine. When the exterior temperature is higher than 37°C, reduce the towed weight.

Towing even with a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect its road holding.
Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer.
When using a vehicle to tow, never exceed a speed of 62 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

If the exterior temperature is high, it is recommended that the engine is allowed to idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to facilitate its cooling.

Engines and towed loads - PETROL

Engine	PureTech 110 BVM5		PureTech 110 BVM6		PureTech 130 BVM6	
Gearbox	**Manual 5-speed**		**Manual 6-speed**		**Manual 6-speed**	
Code	EB2DTM BE5		EB2ADT STT MB6E		EB2DTSM MCM	
Body style	Hatchback	SW	Hatchback	SW	Hatchback	SW
Model codes	LPHNVA	LRHNVA	LPHNPJ	LRHNPJ	LPHNWG	LRHNWG
Cubic capacity (cc)	1,199		1,199		1,199	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	81		81		96	
Fuel	Unleaded		Unleaded		Unleaded	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,200	1,100	1,315	1,200	1,300	1,200
Unbraked trailer (kg)	575	630	575	630	580	630
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	75	71	75	71	75	71

Engine	PureTech 130 S&S BVM6		PureTech 130 EAT6		PureTech 130 S&S EAT8	
Gearbox	**Manual 6-speed**		**Automatic 6-speed**		**Automatic 8-speed**	
Code	EB2ADTS MB6E		EB2DTSM AT6III		EB2ADTS ATN8	
Body style	Hatchback	SW	Hatchback	SW	Hatchback	SW
Model codes	LPHNSJ	LRHNSJ	LPHNWV	LRHNWV	LPHNSK	LRHNSK
Cubic capacity (cm^3)	1,199		1,199		1,199	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	96		96		96	
Fuel	Unleaded		Unleaded		Unleaded	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,300	1,200	1,200	1,100	1,200	1,200

Engine	PureTech 130 S&S BVM6		PureTech 130 EAT6		PureTech 130 S&S EAT8	
Gearbox	**Manual 6-speed**		**Automatic 6-speed**		**Automatic 8-speed**	
Code	EB2ADTS MB6E		EB2DTSM AT6III		EB2ADTS ATN8	
Body style	Hatchback	SW	Hatchback	SW	Hatchback	SW
Model codes	LPHNSJ	LRHNSJ	LPHNWV	LRHNWV	LPHNSK	LRHNSK
Unbraked trailer (kg)	570	620	610	635	570	630
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	75	71	75	71	75	71

Engines	THP 165 EAT6	
Gearboxes	**Automatic 6-speed**	
Code	EP6FDTM AT6III	
Body styles	Hatchback	SW
Model codes	L35GYV	L45GYV
Cubic capacity (cm^3)	1,598	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	121	
Fuel	Unleaded	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	600	600
Unbraked trailer (kg)	600	600
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	75	71

Engines and towed loads - PETROL GTi

Engine	**PureTech 263 S&S BVM6**
Gearbox	**Manual 6-speed**
Code	EP6FADTR MCM STT
Body style	Hatchback
Model codes	L3EGXP
Cubic capacity (cc)	1,598
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	193
Fuel	Unleaded (RON 98 recommended)
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	0
Unbraked trailer (kg)	0
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	0

Engines and towed loads - DIESEL

Engine	**BlueHDi 100 S&S BVM6**	**BlueHDi 130 S&S BVM6**	
Gearbox	**Manual 6-speed**	**Manual 6-speed**	
Code	DV5RD STT MB6	DV5RC ML6C STT	
Body style	Hatchback	Hatchback	SW
Model codes	LBYHYP	LBYHZJ	LCYHZJ
Cubic capacity (CC)	1,499	1,499	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	75	96	

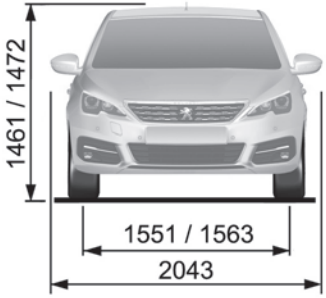
Engine	BlueHDi 100 S&S BVM6	BlueHDi 130 S&S BVM6	
Gearbox	**Manual 6-speed**	**Manual 6-speed**	
Code	DV5RD STT MB6	DV5RC ML6C STT	
Body style	Hatchback	Hatchback	SW
Model codes	LBYHYP	LBYHZJ	LCYHZJ
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,300	1,500	1,400
Unbraked trailer (kg)	600	615	680
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	75	75	71

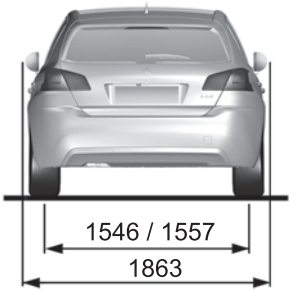
Engine	BlueHDi 130 S&S EAT8		HDi 92 BVM5	
Gearbox	**Automatic 8-speed**		**Manual 5-speed**	
Code	DV5RC STT ATN8		DV6D BE5	
Body style	Hatchback	SW	Hatchback	SW
Model codes	LBYHZK	LCYHZK	LB9HPA	LC9HPA
Cubic capacity (cc)	1,499		1,560	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	96		68	
Fuel	Diesel		Diesel	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,400	1,300	1,300	1,200
Unbraked trailer (kg)	635	690	580	620
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	75	71	75	71

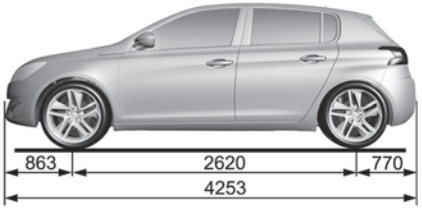
Dimensions (mm)

These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.

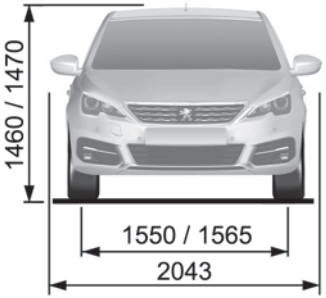
Hatchback

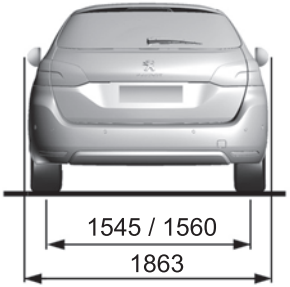


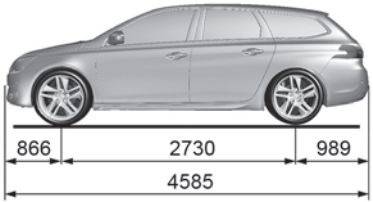




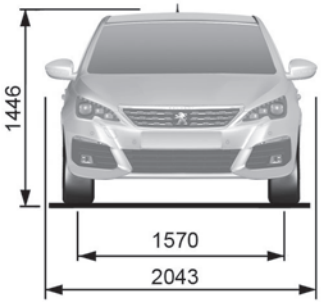
SW

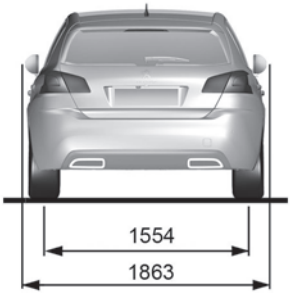


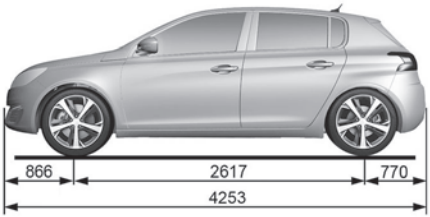




GTi hatchback







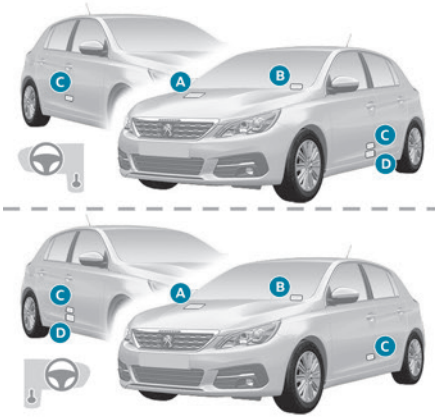
Commercial version

Number of seats: 2 people.
Effective boot volume: 1.31 m³

	In metres (**m**)
Effective floor length	1.458
Effective width at the wheel arches	1.036
Effective width at the centre	1.077
Effective height	
– at the centre	0.916
– at the roof threshold	0.831
– below the load space cover	0.5

Identification markings

Various visible markings for vehicle identification and vehicle search.



A. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), under the bonnet.
Stamped on the chassis, near the right-hand front wheel arch.
B. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), on the dashboard.
Printed on an adhesive label visible through the windscreen.
C. Manufacturer's label.
Affixed to the centre pillar, left-hand side or right-hand side.
Bears the following information:
– Manufacturer’s name.
– European whole vehicle type approval number.
– Vehicle Identification number (VIN).
– Gross vehicle weight (GVW).
– Gross train weight (GTW).
– Maximum weight on the front axle.
– Maximum weight on the rear axle.
D. Tyres/paint code label.
Affixed to the driver's door.
Bears the following information about the tyres:
– Tyre pressures, unladen and laden.
– Tyre specification, made up of the dimensions and type as well as the load and speed indices.
– Spare tyre inflation pressure.
Also indicates the paint colour code.

i The vehicle may be originally equipped with tyres with higher load and speed indices than those indicated on the label, without affecting tyre pressure (on cold tyres).

PEUGEOT Connect Radio

Multimedia audio system - Applications - Bluetooth® telephone

The functions and settings described vary according to the vehicle version and configuration.

For safety reasons and because they require sustained attention by the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on:
– Pairing the smartphone with the system in Bluetooth mode.
– Using the smartphone.
– Connection to the CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ or Android Auto applications (certain applications interrupt their display while the vehicle is moving).
– Changing the system settings and configuration.

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in the vehicle.
The **Energy Economy Mode** message is displayed when the system is about to enter the corresponding mode.

The system's Open Source Software (OSS) source codes are available at the following addresses:
https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/
https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/

First steps

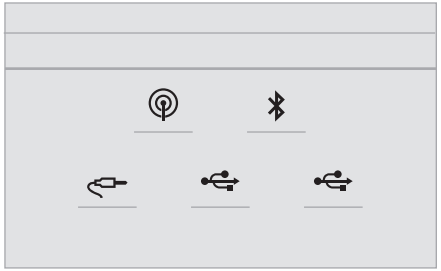
With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.
Increase or decrease the volume using the wheel or the "plus" or "minus" buttons (depending on the equipment).
Use the buttons on either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.
Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons on the left of the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

At all times it is possible to display the rolling menus by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.
All of the touch areas of the screen are white.
For pages with multiple tabs at the bottom of the screen, it is possible to switch between pages either by tapping the tab for the desired page, or by using a finger, sliding the pages to the left or to the right.
Press in the grey zone to go back up a level or to confirm.
Press the back arrow to go back a level or confirm.

The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper bar of the touch screen:
– Air conditioning status information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
– Radio Media and Telephone menu status information.
– Privacy status information.
– Access to the touch screen and digital instrument panel settings.
Audio source selection (depending on equipment):

– FM/DAB/AM radio stations (depending on equipment).
– Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).
– USB Memory stick.
– Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on equipment).



In the "Settings" menu, it is possible to create a profile for an individual or for a group of people with shared interests, and configure a wide range of settings (radio presets, audio settings, ambiences, etc.). Settings are applied automatically.

In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may enter standby mode (with the screen and sound off) for 5 minutes or more.
The system will resume normal operation when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls

Steering mounted controls - Type 1

Radio:
Select the previous/next preset radio station.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select the previous/next track.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.

Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the available sorting options.

Confirm a selection.

Increase volume.

Decrease volume.

Mute/restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

Steering mounted controls - Type 2

Voice control:
This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).
Short press: smartphone voice commands via the system.

Increase volume.

Decrease volume.
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously (depending on equipment).
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

Mute/restore the sound.
Or
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

Telephone (short press): start telephone call.
Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.
Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.

OK **Radio** (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.
Media (rotate): previous/next track, move through a list.
Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access presets.

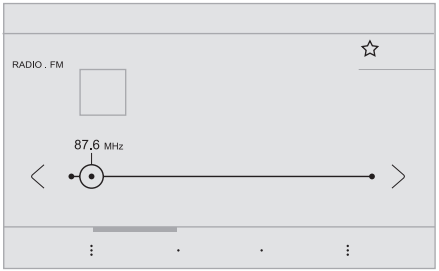
LIST **Radio**: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio (press and hold): update the list of detected stations.

Menus

Applications

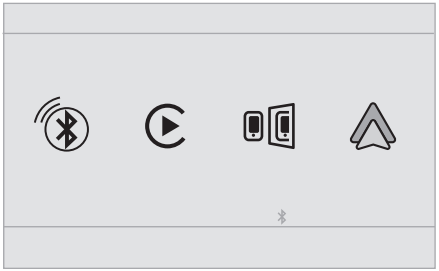
Access configurable equipment.

Radio Media



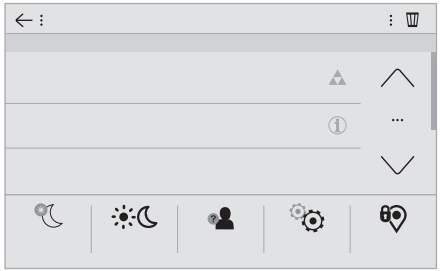
Select an audio source or radio station.

Telephone



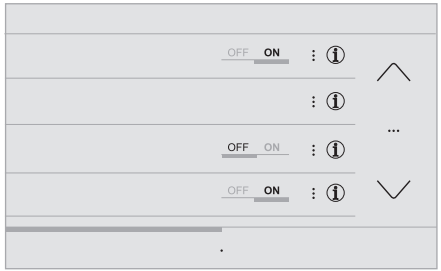
Connect a mobile phone via Bluetooth®.
Run certain applications on a smartphone connected via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.

Settings



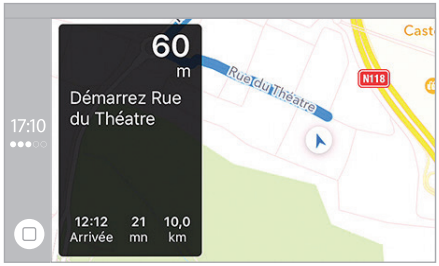
Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).

Driving



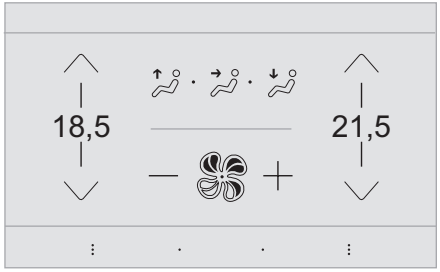
Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

Navigation



Configure the navigation and select your destination via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.

Air conditioning



Manage various temperature and air flow settings.

Applications

Viewing photos

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.

> ! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system can read folders and image files in the formats: .tiff; .gif; .jpg/jpeg; .bmp and .png.

Press **Applications** to display the main page.

Press "**Photos**".

Select a folder.

Select an image to view.

Press this button to display the details of the photo.

Press the back arrow to go back a level.

Managing messages

Press **Applications** to display the main page.

Press "SMS".

Select the "SMS" tab.

Press this button to select the display settings for messages.

Press this button to search and select a recipient.

Select the "Quick messages" tab.

Press this button to select the display settings for messages.

Press this button to write a new message.

Press the bin alongside the selected message to delete it.

Press this button alongside the selected message to display the secondary page.

Press this button to edit and modify the existing text.

Press this button to write a new message.

Press the bin to delete the message.

Radio

Selecting a station

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press one of the buttons to perform an automatic search for radio stations.

Or

Move the slider to manually search for frequencies up or down.

Or

MHz KHz Press the frequency.

Enter the FM and AM waveband values using the virtual keypad.
Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.
The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode.
This phenomenon is perfectly normal in the context of radio wave transmission, and in no way indicative of an audio system malfunction.

Changing the waveband

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Press "**Band**" to change waveband.
Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.
Make a short press on the star outline. If the star is solid, the radio station is already preset.

Or
Select a radio station or frequency.
Press "**Preset**".
Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activating/Deactivating RDS

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies.
Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Activate/deactivate "**RDS**".
Press in the shaded area to confirm.

RDS station tracking may not be available nationwide, as many radio stations do not cover 100 % of the country. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Displaying text information

The "Radio Text" function displays information transmitted by the radio station relating to the station or the currently playing song.
Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Activate/deactivate "**News**".
Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Playing TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the previously playing media resumes at the end of the message.
Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Activate/deactivate "**TA**".
Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Audio settings

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Press "**Audio settings**".

Select the "**Tone**", "**Balance**", "**Sound**", "**Voice**" or "**Ringtones**" tab to configure the sound settings.

Press the back arrow to confirm.

In the "**Tone**" tab, the **Ambience**, **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** sound settings are different and independent for each audio source.
In the "**Balance**" tab, the **All passengers**, **Driver** and **Front only** settings are common to all sources.
In the "**Sound**" tab, activate or deactivate "**Volume linked to speed**", "**Auxiliary input**" and "**Touch tones**".

The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys© system) uses audio processing to adjust the sound quality according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.

Onboard audio: Arkamys Sound Staging© optimises the sound distribution inside the passenger compartment.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

Digital radio provides higher quality sound.
The various "multiplexes/ensembles" offer a choice of radio stations organised in alphabetical order.

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Press "**Band**" to select "**DAB band**".

Press in the shaded area to confirm.

FM-DAB Follow-up

"DAB" does not cover 100 % of the country.
When the digital radio signal is poor, the "FM-DAB Follow-up" enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Activate/deactivate "**FM-DAB Follow-up**".

Press in the shaded area to confirm.

If "FM-DAB Follow-up" is activated, there may be a time offset of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio, and in some cases a change in volume. When the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM", or if "FM-DAB Follow-up" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port

Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory); this operation can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.

Playlists are updated whenever the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The audio system memorises these lists, which will subsequently load faster if they have not been changed.

Auxiliary (AUX) jack socket

Depending on equipment

Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).
This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been selected in the audio settings.
First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the audio system.
Controls are managed via the portable device.

Selecting the source

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**SOURCES**" button.
Select the source.

BluetoothStreaming®

Streaming allows you to listen to the audio feed from your smartphone.
The Bluetooth profile must be activated.
First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

Once connected in Streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.
Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audio books/podcasts). It is also possible to use a classification structured in the form of a library.
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of the Apple® player.

Information and advice

The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via the USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.
Devices are managed using the audio system controls.
Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, if compatible.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio system will only play audio files with ".wav", ".wma", ".aac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions, at bit rates between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.
All ".wma" files must be standard WMA 9 files.
The supported sampling rates are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHz.
To avoid reading and display problems, we recommend choosing file names less than 20 characters long that do not contain any special characters (e.g. “ ? . ; ù).
Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

We recommend using the original USB cable for the portable device.

Telephone

USB sockets

Depending on equipment, for more information on the USB sockets compatible with the **CarPlay®**, **MirrorLink™** or **Android Auto** applications, refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section.

The synchronisation of a smartphone allows users to display applications adapted to the CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ or Android Auto technology of the smartphone on the vehicle screen. For the CarPlay® technology, the CarPlay® function must be activated on the smartphone beforehand.
For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work, it is essential in all cases that the smartphone is unlocked.
As the principles and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep the smartphone's operating system up-to-date, as well as the date and time of the smartphone and of the system**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's national website.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

Depending on country/version.

The "MirrorLink™" function requires a compatible smartphone and compatible applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®

When connecting a smartphone to the system, we recommend enabling Bluetooth® on the smartphone.

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the main page.

Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink™**" function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain features are displayed.

Accept to start and complete the connection.

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the main page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to display the secondary page.

Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Once the connection is established, a page is displayed, showing the applications already downloaded to the smartphone that are compatible with MirrorLink™ technology.
Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using the touch buttons located in the upper bar.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

There may be a pause before applications become available, depending on the quality of the network.

CarPlay® smartphone connection

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

From the system, press **Telephone** to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or

If the smartphone has already connected by Bluetooth®.

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the main page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to access the secondary page.

Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.

When the USB cable is disconnected and the ignition is switched off then back on, the system will not automatically switch to Radio Media mode; the source must be changed manually.

The CarPlay® navigation can be accessed at any time by pressing the system's **Navigation** button.

Android Auto smartphone connection

On the smartphone, download the Android Auto application.

The "Android Auto" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the main page.

Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**Android Auto**" function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain features are displayed.

Accept to start and complete the connection.

When connecting a smartphone to the system, we recommend enabling Bluetooth® on the smartphone.

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®

From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the main page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to display the secondary page.

Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the Android Auto display, using the touch buttons located in the upper bar.

Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

There may be a pause before applications become available, depending on the quality of the network.

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Consult the telephone user guide and the service provider to check which services are available.

The Bluetooth function must be activated and the telephone configured as "Visible to all" (in the telphone settings).

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

If the pairing procedure fails, we recommend deactivating and then reactivating the Bluetooth function on the telephone.

Procedure from the telephone

Select the name of the system in the list of detected devices.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

Procedure from the system

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press "**Bluetooth search**".
The list of detected telephones is displayed.

Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:
– "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
– "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of audio files on the telephone),
– "**Mobile internet data**".

Select one or more profiles.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may by prompted to accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

> The ability of the system to connect just one profile depends on the telephone.
> All three profiles may connect by default.

> The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Visit the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Automatic reconnection

On returning to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds after switching on the ignition, the pairing is established automatically (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
Press the "**PHONE**" button to access the secondary page.

Press "**Bluetooth connection" to display the list of paired devices.**

Press the "Details" button for a paired device.

Select one or more profiles.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Managing paired telephones

This function lets you connect or disconnect a device or delete a pairing.

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
Press the "**PHONE**" button to access the secondary page.

Press "**Bluetooth connection" to display the list of paired devices.**

Press on the name of the telephone selected in the list to disconnect it.
Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone

Press the basket at the top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.

Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.
And

+2s Make a long press

on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.
Or

Press "**End call**".

Making a call

> Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
> Parking the vehicle.
> Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.

Press "**Call" to start the call.**

Calling a contact

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Or press and hold

the steering mounted **PHONE** button.

Press "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the displayed list.

Press "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Or

Press and hold

the steering mounted button.

Press "**Recent calls**".

Select the desired contact from the displayed list.

It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Setting the ringtone

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Press "**Ring volume**" to display the volume bar.

Press the arrows or move the slider to set the ring volume.

Settings

Configuring profiles

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**", "**Profile 2**", "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".

Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

Press "**OK**" to save.

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press this button to activate the profile.

Press the back arrow again to confirm.

Press this button to reset the selected profile.

Adjusting the brightness

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press **Brightness**.

Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or the instrument panel (depending on version).

Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Modifying system settings

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.

Press "**System configuration**".

Press the "**Units**" tab to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Press the "**Factory settings**" tab to restore the initial settings.

Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default (depending on version).

Press the "**System info**" tab to display the versions of the various modules installed in the system.
Press the "**Privacy**" tab,
or

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Privacy**" to activate or deactivate the private data mode.

Activate or deactivate:

– "**No sharing (data, vehicle position)**".
– "**Only data sharing**"
– "**Data and vehicle position sharing**"

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.

Press "**Screen configuration**".

Press "**Brightness**".

Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or the instrument panel (depending on version).

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press "**Animation**".

Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".

Select "**Animated transitions**".

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Selecting the language

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.

Select "**Language**" to change the language.

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Setting the time

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.

Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Time**".

Press this button to set the time using the virtual keypad.

Press "**OK**" to save the time.

Press this button to set the time zone.

Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).

Activate or deactivate summer time (+1 hour).

Activate or deactivate GPS synchronisation (UTC).

Press the back arrow to save the settings.

The system may not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Setting the date

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.

Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Date**".

Press this button to set the date.

Press the back arrow to save the date.

Select the display format for the date.

Press the back arrow again to confirm.

Time and date setting is only available if "GPS Synchronisation:" is deactivated.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the system.

Radio

The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the station presets are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).
The vehicle is too far from the selected station's transmitter, or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.
► Activate the "RDS" function in the upper bar to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) is blocking reception, including in RDS mode.
This is a perfectly normal phenomenon, and is not indicative of an audio system malfunction.
The aerial is missing or has been damaged (for example while entering a car wash or underground car park).
► Have the aerial checked by a dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of received stations.
The name of the radio station changes.
The station is no longer received or its name has changed in the list.
► Press the round arrow on the "List" tab on the "Radio" page.
Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example).
The system interprets these details as the station name.
► Press the round arrow on the "List" tab on the "Radio" page.

Media

Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).
Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the cataloguing time).
► Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
Some characters in information about the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.
The audio system is unable to process certain types of character.
► Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.
The connected device does not automatically launch playback.
► Start playback from the device.
Track names and playing times are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.
The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.

Telephone

I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.
The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.
► Check that the telephone has Bluetooth switched on.
► Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.
► Check the compatibility of the telephone on the Brand's website (services).
Android Auto and CarPlay do not work.
Android Auto and CarPlay may not activate if the USB cables are of poor quality.
► Use genuine USB cables to ensure compatibility.
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.
The volume depends on both the system and the telephone.
► Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.
► Reduce ambient noise (close windows, reduce ventilation, slow down, etc.).
The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.

Some telephones offer display options.
Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.
► Modify the telephone directory display settings.

Settings

When the treble and bass settings are changed, the ambience is deselected.
When the ambience is changed, the treble and bass settings are reset.
Selecting an ambience imposes the treble and bass settings, and vice versa.
► Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When the balance settings are changed, the distribution is deselected.
When the distribution setting is changed, the balance settings are deselected.
Selecting a distribution setting imposes the balance settings, and vice versa.
► Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between audio sources.
To allow for optimal listening quality, the sound settings can be tailored to different audio sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.
► Check that the sound settings are appropriate to the sources listened to. Adjust the sound functions to the middle position.

When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.
When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery.
The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.
► Start the vehicle’s engine to increase the charge of the battery.

PEUGEOT Connect Nav

GPS navigation - Applications - Multimedia audio system - Bluetooth® telephone

The functions and settings described vary according to the vehicle version and configuration.

For safety reasons and because they require sustained attention by the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on:
– Pairing the smartphone with the system in Bluetooth mode.
– Using the smartphone.
– Connection to the CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ or Android Auto applications (certain applications interrupt their display while the vehicle is moving).
– Watching a video (the video stops when the vehicle starts to move again).
– Changing the system settings and configuration.

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in the vehicle.
The **Energy Economy Mode** message is displayed when the system is about to enter the corresponding mode.

System and map updates can be downloaded from the Brand's website.
The update procedure is also available on the website.

The system's Open Source Software (OSS) source codes are available at the following addresses:
https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/
https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/

First steps

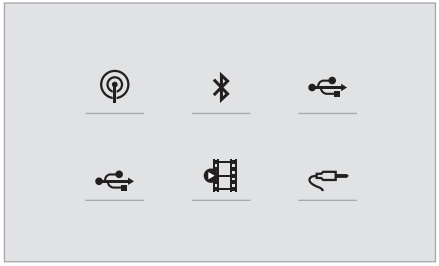
With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.
Increase or decrease the volume using the wheel or the "plus" or "minus" buttons (depending on the equipment).

Use the menu buttons on either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.
Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons to access the rolling menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.
Display the rolling menus at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.
All of the touch areas of the screen are white.
Press the back arrow to go back a level.
Press "OK" to confirm.

The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the side bars or in the upper bar of the touch screen (depending on equipment):
– Air conditioning status information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
– Go directly to the audio source selection option, to view the list of radio stations (or list of titles depending on the source).
– Go to the "Notifications" of messages, emails, map updates and, depending on the services, the navigation notifications.
– Go to the settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.

Audio source selection (depending on equipment):
– FM/DAB/AM radio stations (depending on equipment).
– Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).
– USB memory stick.
– Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on equipment).
– Video (depending on equipment).



In the "Settings" menu, it is possible to create a profile for an individual or for a group of people with shared interests, and configure a wide range of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, favourite contacts, etc.). Settings are applied automatically.

In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may enter standby mode (with the screen and sound off) for 5 minutes or more.
The system will resume normal operation when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls

Voice control:
This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).
Short press, system voice control.
Long press, voice commands from smartphone or CarPlay®, Android Auto via the system.

Increase volume.

Decrease volume.

Mute/restore the sound.

Telephone (short press): start telephone call.
Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.
Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.

OK **Radio** (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.
Media (rotate): previous/next track, move through a list.
Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access presets.

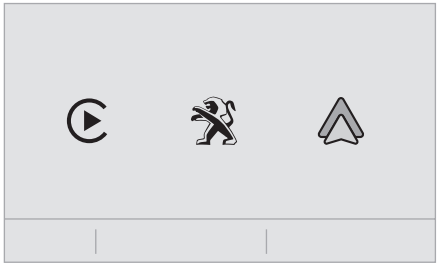
LIST **Radio**: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio (press and hold): update the list of detected stations.

Menus

Connected navigation

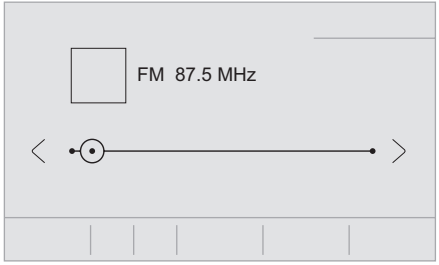
Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.
Use real-time services, depending on equipment.

Applications



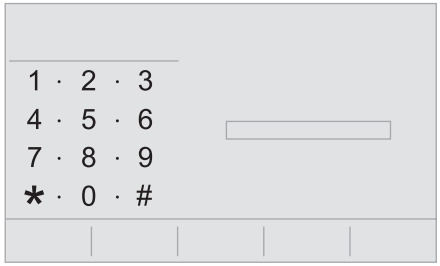
Run certain applications from a smartphone connected via CarPlay® or Android Auto.
Check the status of the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi connections.

Radio Media



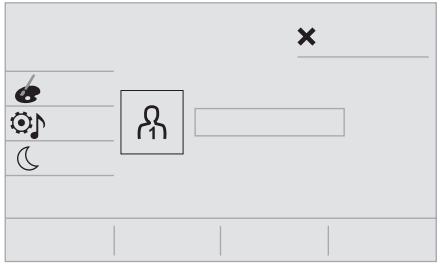
Select an audio source or radio station, or display photographs.

Telephone



Connect a telephone via Bluetooth®, read messages and emails and send quick messages.

Settings

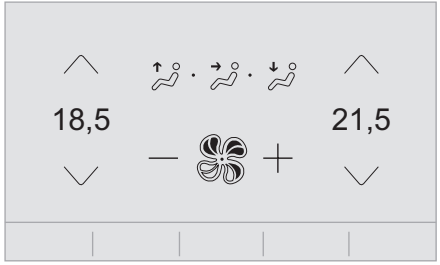


Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).

Vehicle

Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

Air conditioning



Manage various temperature and air flow settings.

Voice commands

Steering wheel-mounted controls

Voice commands:
Voice commands can be issued from any screen page after a short press on the "Voice commands" button located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment), as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

! To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please follow these recommendations:
– **use natural language in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.**
– always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before speaking.
– for best results, closing the windows and sunroof is recommended, to avoid extraneous interference (depending on version).
– before issuing a voice command, ask any other passengers to refrain from speaking.

First steps

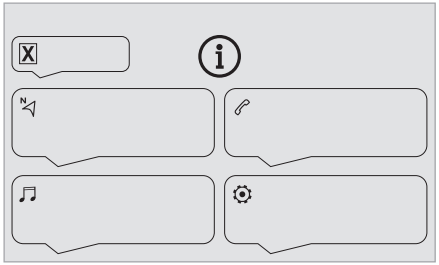
Example of a "voice command" for navigation:
"Navigate to address 11 regent street, London"

Example of a "voice command" for the radio and media:
"Play artist Madonna"
Example of a "voice command" for the telephone:
"Call David Miller" "

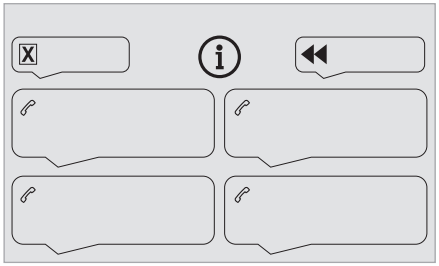
! The voice commands, with a choice of 17 languages (Arabic, Brazilian, Czech, Danish, Dutch, English, Farsi, French, German, Italian, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Russian, Spanish, Swedish, Turkish), are made using the language previously chosen and set in the system.
For some voice commands, there are alternative synonyms.
Example: Guide to / Navigate to / Go to / ...
The voice commands in Arabic for: "Navigate to address" and "Display POI in the city", are not available.

Information - Using the system

When voice commands are activated, by briefly pressing the button, help is displayed on the touch screen, offering various menus and enabling voice-based interaction with the system.



A number of commands are available when a menu is selected.



Press the Push To Talk button and tell me what you'd like after the tone. Remember you can interrupt me at any time by pressing this button. If you press it again while I'm waiting for you to speak, it'll end the conversation. If you need to start over, say "cancel". If you want to undo something, say "undo". And to get information and tips at any time, just say "help". If you ask to me do something and there's some information missing that I need, I'll give you some examples or take you through it step by

step. There's more information available in "novice" mode. You can set the dialogue mode to "expert" when you feel comfortable.

Global voice commands

Voice commands

Set dialogue mode as novice - expert
Select user 1 / Select profile John
Increase temperature
Decrease temperature

Help messages

There are lots of topics I can help you with. You can say: "help with phone", "help with navigation", "help with media" or "help with radio". For an overview on how to use voice controls, you can say "help with voice controls". Say "yes" if I got that right. Otherwise, say "no" and we'll start that again.

"Navigation" voice commands

Voice commands

Navigate home
Navigate to work
Navigate to preferred address, Tennis club
Navigate to contact, John Miller
Navigate to address 11 regent street, London

Help messages

To plan a route, say "navigate to" followed by the address, the contact name or an intersection. For example, "navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London", "navigate to contact, John Miller", or "navigate to intersection of Regent Street, London". You can specify if it's a preferred address, or a Point of Interest. For example, say "navigate to preferred address, Tennis club", or "navigate to POI Heathrow Airport in London". Or, you can just say, "navigate home". To see Points of Interest on a map, you can say things like "show POI hotels in Banbury". For more information say "help with points of interest" or "help with route guidance".
To choose a destination, say something like "navigate to line three" or "select line two". If you can't find the destination but the street's right, say for example "select the street in line three". To move around a displayed list, you can say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

Voice commands

Tell me the remaining distance
Tell me the remaining time
Tell me the arrival time
Stop route guidance

Help messages

You can say "stop" or "resume route guidance". To get information about your current route, you can say "tell me the remaining time", "remaining distance" or "arrival time". To learn more commands, try saying "help with navigation".

Voice commands

Show POI "hotel" at the destination
Show nearby POI petrol station"
Navigate to POI Heathrow Airport in London
Navigate to POI petrol station along the route

Help messages

To see points of interest on a map, you can say things like "show hotels in Banbury", "show nearby parking", "show hotel at the destination" or "show petrol station along the route". If you prefer to navigate directly to a point of interest, you can say "navigate to nearby petrol station". If you feel you are not being well understood, try to say the word "POI" in front of the point of interest. For example say "navigate to POI restaurant at the destination".
To choose a POI, say something like "select line 2". If you've searched for a Point of Interest and don't see the one you're after, you can filter further by saying something like "select POI in line 2", or "select the city in line 3". You can also scroll through the list by saying "next page" or "previous page".

Depending on the country, give destination (address) instructions in the language configured for the system.

"Radio Media" voice commands

Voice commands

Turn on source radio - Streaming Bluetooth - ...

Help messages

You can select an audio source by saying "turn on source" followed by the device name. For example, "turn on source, Streaming Bluetooth", or "turn on source, radio". Use the command "play" to specify the type of music you'd like to hear. You can choose between "song", "artist", or "album". Just say something like "play artist, Madonna", "play song, Hey Jude", or "play album, Thriller".

Voice commands

Tune to channel BBC Radio 2
Tune to 98.5 FM
Tune to preset number five

Help messages

You can pick a radio station by saying "tune to" and the station name or frequency. For example "tune to channel Talksport" or "tune to 98.5 FM". To listen to a preset radio station, say for example "tune to preset number five".

Voice commands

What's playing?

Help messages

To choose what you'd like to play, start by saying "play" and then the item. For example, say "play song Hey Jude", "play line 3" or "select line 2". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

Voice commands

Play song Hey Jude
Play artist Madonna
Play album Thriller

Help messages

I'm not sure what you'd like to play. Please say "play" and then a song title, an album title, or an artist name. For example, say "play song Hey Jude", "play artist Madonna" or "play album Thriller". To select a line number from the display, say "select line two". To move around a displayed list, you can say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

Media voice commands are available only with a USB connection.

"Telephone" voice commands

If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone", and the voice session is closed.

Voice commands

Call David Miller" *
Call voicemail*
Display calls*

Help messages

To make a phone call, say "call" followed by the contact name, for example: "Call David Miller". You can also include the phone type, for example: "Call David Miller at home". To make a call by number, say "dial" followed by the phone number, for example, "Dial 107776 835 417". You can check your voicemail by saying "call voicemail". To send a text, say "send quick message to", followed by the contact, and then the name of the quick message you'd like to send. For example, "send quick message to

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and the corresponding download has been performed.

David Miller, I'll be late". To display the list of calls, say "display calls". For more information on SMS, you can say "help with texting".
To choose a contact, say something like "select line three". To move around the list say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

"Text message" voice commands

If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone", and the voice session is closed.

The "Text messages" voice commands function allows you to dictate and send an SMS.
Dictate the text, taking care to pause briefly between each word.
When you have finished, the voice recognition system will automatically generate an SMS.

Voice commands

Send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late

Help messages

From the list of quick messages, say the name of the one you'd like to send. To move around the list you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

Voice commands

Send SMS to John Miller, I'm just arriving
Send SMS to David Miller at the office, don't wait for me

Help messages

Please say "call" or "send quick message to", and then select a line from the list. To move around a list shown on the display, you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

Voice commands

Listen to most recent message*

Help messages

To hear your last message, you can say "listen to most recent message". When you want to send a text, there's a set of quick messages ready for you to use. Just use the quick message name and say something like "send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late". Check the phone menu for the names of the supported messages.

The system only sends pre-recorded "Quick messages".

Navigation

Choice of a destination

To a new destination

Intuitive method:

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press "**Search…**".

Enter an address or key words for your destination.

Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

Or

Guided method:

Before you can use the navigation feature, you must enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" (suggestions are displayed automatically when you begin typing), and the "**Number**" on the virtual keypad, or select an

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and the corresponding download has been performed.

address from the "**Contact**" list or the address "**History**".

i If you do not confirm the house number, the navigation system will show one end of the street.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Enter address**".

Then

Select the **Country**

Select the keyboard “language”.

Change the keyboard "type" according to the selected "language": ABCDE; AZERTY; QWERTY or QWERTZ.

Enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**", and confirm by pressing on the displayed suggestions.

OK Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

And/or

Select "**See on map**" to choose the "**Guidance criteria**".

OK Press "**OK**" to start guided navigation.

i Zoom in/out using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

To a recent destination

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Recent**” tab.

Select the address chosen in the list to display the "**Guidance criteria**”.

OK Press "**OK**" to start guided navigation.

i Select "**Position**" to see the point of arrival on the map.

To "Home" or "My work"

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Preferred**” tab.

Select "**Home**".

Or

Select "**My work**".

Or

Select a preset favourite destination.

To a contact

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Contact**” tab.

Select a contact in the list to start guided navigation.

To points of interest (POI)

Guided method:

Points of interest (POI) are listed in different categories.

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Points of interest**".

Select the "**Travel**", "**leisure**", "**Commercial**", "**Public**" or "**Geographic**” tab.

Or

Select "**Search**" to enter the name and address of a POI.

OK Press "**OK**" to calculate the route.

Or

Intuitive method:

You can only select this method in order to use the service if a network connection is active; this may be either a "network connection provided by the vehicle", if you use the Peugeot Connect Packs solution, or else a "network connection provided by the user" via a smartphone,
In both cases, the system is automatically connected to the Internet, if network coverage permits.

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.
Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Search**".
Press on the mode shown in the bottom right of the screen (On-Board or Connected) to change "Database".
Select the "Database" in "On-Board" mode (integrated into the map), or in "Connected" mode (connected to the Internet).
Press the back arrow to confirm.
Enter an address or key words for your destination (POI).
Press "**OK**" to start the search.
Select the "**On the route**", "**Around the vehicle**" or "**At destination**" tab to refine your search.
Select the desired address to calculate the route.

To a point on the map

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.
Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.
Select the destination by pressing on the map.
Tap the screen to place a marker and display the sub-menu.
Press this button to start guided navigation.
Or
Press this button to save the displayed address.

A long press on a point opens a list of nearby POIs.

To GPS coordinates

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.
Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.
Touch the screen with a finger to go to the next image.
Press this button to display the world map.
Using the grid, select the desired country or region by zooming.
Press this button to display or enter the GPS coordinates.
A marker is displayed in the middle of the screen, with the "**Latitude**" and "**Longitude**" coordinates.
Choose the type of coordinates:
DMS for: Degrees, Minutes, Seconds.
DD for: Degrees, Decimals.
Press this button to start guided navigation.
Or
Press this button to save the displayed address.
OR
Press this button to enter the "**Latitude**" value using the virtual keypad.
And
Press this button to enter the "**Longitude**" value using the virtual keypad.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel)

Available in some countries.
TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages are based on a European standard for traffic information broadcasting via the RDS system on FM radio, sending traffic information in real time. The TMC information is then displayed on a GPS Navigation system map and taken into account straight away when routes are calculated, to avoid accidents, traffic jams and closed roads.

Danger zone alerts may or may not be displayed, depending on the applicable

legislation and subscription to the corresponding service.

Connected navigation

Connected navigation connection

Depending on version, vehicle trim level and subscription to online services and options.

Network connection provided by the vehicle

If you use the Peugeot Connect Packs solution, the system is automatically connected to the Internet and connected services, and does not require the user to provide a connection via their smartphone.

OR

Network connection provided by the user

For the list of suitable smartphones, visit the Brand's national website.

Activate and enter settings for sharing the smartphone connection.

As processes and standards are constantly changing, we recommend you **update the smartphone operating system as well as the date and time on the smartphone and system**, to ensure that the communication process between the smartphone and the system functions correctly.

USB connection

Connect the USB cable.
The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

Bluetooth connection

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is visible to all (see the "Connect-App" section).

Wi-Fi connection

Select a Wi-Fi network detected by the system and connect to it.

This function is only available if it has been activated either via the "Notifications" or via the "Applications" menu.

Press "**Notifications**".

Select Wi-Fi to activate it.

OR

Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".

Select the "**Secured**", "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.

Select a network.

Using the virtual keypad, enter the Wi-Fi network "**Key**" and "**Password**".

Press "**OK**" to establish a connection between the smartphone and the vehicle's system.

Usage restrictions:
– With CarPlay®, connection sharing is only available with a Wi-Fi connection.
– With MirrorLink™, connection sharing is only available with a USB connection.
The quality of services depends on the quality of the network connection.

Authorize sending information

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**System configuration**".

Select the "**Private mode**" tab.

OR

Press "**Notifications**".

Press "**Private mode**".

THEN

Activate or deactivate:

– "**No sharing (data, vehicle position)**".
– "**Only data sharing**"
– "**Sharing data and vehicle position**"

Settings specific to connected navigation

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Settings**".

Select the "**Map**" tab.

Activate or deactivate:
– "**Allow declaration of danger zones**".
– "**Guidance to final destination on foot**".

These settings must be configured for each profile.

OK Press "**OK" to confirm your selection.**

Select the "**Alerts**" tab.

Activate or deactivate:

– "**Advise of car park nearby**".
– "**Filling station alert**".
– "**Risk areas alert**" then press the warning icon (triangle) to configure alerts.
– "**Give an audible warning**".
– "**Advise proximity of POI 1**".
– "**Advise proximity of POI 2**".

OK Press "**OK" to confirm your selection.**

The "Notifications", in the upper bar, can be accessed at any time.

Danger zone alerts may or may not be displayed, depending on the applicable legislation and subscription to the corresponding service.

When "TOMTOM TRAFFIC" appears, the services are available.

The services offered with connected navigation are as follows.
A Connected Services pack:
– Weather,
– Filling stations,
– Car park,
– Traffic,
– POI local search.
A Danger area pack (optional).

Declaration: "Risk areas alert"

To send information about danger zones, select the option:**Allow declaration of danger zones**

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**Declare a new danger zone**" button located in the side bars or the upper bar of the touch screen (depending on equipment).

Select the "**Type**" option to select the type of "Danger area".

Select the "**"Speed**" option and enter it using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to save and send the information.

Displaying fuel information

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press this button to display the list of services.

Press "**POI on map" to display the list of points of interest.**

Press one of the buttons to search for "**Stations**".

Activate/deactivate "**Stations**".

Press this button to display a secondary page.

Select the "**Settings**" tab.

Select the desired fuel.

Press "**OK**" to save.

Displaying charging station details

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press this button to display the list of services.

Press "**POI on map" to display the list of points of interest.**

Press one of the buttons to search for "**Stations**".

Activate/deactivate "**Stations**".

Press this button to display a secondary page.

Select the "**Settings**" tab.

Select the desired connector type.

Press "**OK**" to save.

Displaying weather information

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press this button to display the list of services.

Select "**View map**".

Select "**Weather**".

Press this button to display basic information.

Press this button to display detailed weather information.

The temperature displayed at 6 a.m. will be the maximum temperature for the day. The temperature displayed at 6 p.m. will be the minimum temperature for the night.

Applications

USB ports

Depending on equipment, for more information on the USB ports compatible with **CarPlay®**, **MirrorLink™** or **Android Auto** applications, refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section.

For the list of suitable smartphones, visit the Brand's national website.

Synchronising a smartphone enables users to display applications that support the smartphone's MirrorLinkCarPlay®, ™ or Android Auto technology on the vehicle's screen. For CarPlay® technology, the CarPlay® function must first be activated on the smartphone.
In all cases, the smartphone must be unlocked, to enable the communication process between the smartphone and the system to function.
As principles and standards are constantly changing, **we recommend keeping the smartphone's operating system up-to-date, together with the date and time on the smartphone and the system**.

Connectivity

Press **Applications** to display the main page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to access the **CarPlay®**, **MirrorLink™** or **Android Auto** functions.

CarPlay® smartphone connection

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

Press "**Telephone**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the main page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to access the "CarPlay®" function.

Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.

When the USB cable is disconnected and the ignition is switched off then back on, the system will not automatically switch to Radio Media mode; the source must be changed manually.

Android Auto smartphone connection

Install the "**Android Auto**" application on the smartphone via "Google Play".
The "**Android Auto**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.
From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the main page.
Press "**Connectivity**" to access the "Android Auto" function.
Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.
OK
During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain features are displayed.
Accept to start and complete the connection.

Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the Android Auto display, using the touch buttons located in the upper bar.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

In Android Auto mode, the function that displays rolling menus by briefly pressing the screen with three fingers is disabled.

There may be a pause before applications become available, depending on the quality of the network.

Car Apps

Press **Applications** to display the main page.
Press "**Car Apps**" to display the applications home page.

Internet Browser

Press **Applications** to display the main page.
Press "**Connectivity**" to access the "**Connected Apps**" function.
Press "**Connected Apps**" to display the browser home page.
Select the country of residence.
OK
Press "**OK**" to save and start the browser.

Connection to the internet is via one of the network connections provided by the vehicle or the user.

Bluetooth connection®

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Consult the smartphone user guide and the service provider to check which services are available.

The Bluetooth function must be activated and the smartphone configured as "Visible to all".

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the smartphone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the smartphone.

If the pairing procedure fails, we recommend deactivating and then reactivating the Bluetooth function on the smartphone.

Procedure from the smartphone

Select the name of the system in the list of detected devices.
In the system, accept the connection request from the smartphone.

Procedure from the system

Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Press "**Bluetooth connection**".
Select "**Search**".
The list of detected smartphones is displayed.
Select the name of the chosen smartphone in the list.

Depending on the type of smartphone, you may by prompted to accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the smartphone with 3 profiles:
– "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
– "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of audio files on the smartphone),
– "**Mobile internet data**".

The "**Mobile internet data**" profile must be activated for connected navigation (if the vehicle does not have "Emergency and assistance call" services), after first activating smartphone connection sharing.

Select one or more profiles.

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Wi-Fi connection

Network connection via the smartphone's Wi-Fi.
Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".
Select the "**Secured**", "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.
Select a network.
Using the virtual keypad , enter the Wi-Fi network "**Key**" and "**Password**".
Press "**OK**" to establish the connection.

The Wi-Fi connection and Wi-Fi connection sharing are exclusive.

Wi-Fi connection sharing

Depending on equipment.
Creation of a local Wi-Fi network by the system.
Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Share Wi-Fi connection**".
Select the "**Activation**" tab to activate or deactivate Wi-Fi connection sharing.
And/or
Select the "**Settings**" tab to change the system's network name and password.
Press "**OK**" to confirm.

To protect against unauthorised access and to make all systems as secure as possible, the use of a security code or a complex password is recommended.

Managing connections

Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Manage connection**".
With this function, you can view the access to connected services, the availability of connected services and modify the connection mode.

Radio

Selecting a station

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press "**Frequency**".
Press one of the buttons to perform an automatic search for radio stations.

Or

Move the slider to manually search for frequencies up or down.

Or

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Radio stations**" on the secondary page.

Press "**Frequency**".

Enter the values using the virtual keypad. First enter the units then click on the decimals field to enter the figures after the decimal point.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.
The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode.
This phenomenon is perfectly normal in the context of radio wave transmission, and in no way indicative of an audio system malfunction.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.
(refer to the corresponding section)

Press "**Presets**".

Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Changing the waveband

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

To change the waveband, press "Band…", displayed at the top right of the screen.

Activating/Deactivating RDS

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies.

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".

Activate/deactivate "**Station follow**".

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i RDS station tracking may not be available nationwide, as many radio stations do not cover 100 % of the country. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Displaying text information

The "Radio Text" function displays information transmitted by the radio station relating to the station or the currently playing song.

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".

Activate/deactivate "**Display radio text**".

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Playing TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the previously playing media resumes at the end of the message.

Select "**Announcements**".

Activate/deactivate "**Traffic announcement**".

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

Digital radio provides higher quality sound.
The various "multiplexes/ensembles" offer a choice of radio stations organised in alphabetical order.

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press “Band …" at the top right of the screen to display the "**DAB**" waveband.

FM-DAB tracking

“DAB" does not cover 100 % of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, “FM-DAB auto follow-up" enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatically switching to the corresponding FM analogue station (if there is one).

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".

Activate/deactivate "**FM-DAB Follow-up**".

Activate/deactivate "**Station follow**".

OK Press "**OK**".

i If “FM-DAB auto tracking" is activated, there may be a time offset of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio, and in some cases a change in volume.
When the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on “FM” (“**FM-DAB**" option shaded), or "FM-DAB auto tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port

Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory); this operation can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
Playlists are updated whenever the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The audio system memorises these lists, which will subsequently load faster if they have not been changed.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

Depending on equipment

Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).
This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been selected in the audio settings.
First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the audio system.
Controls are managed via the portable device.

Selecting the source

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Select "**SOURCES**".
Select the source.

Watching a video

Depending on equipment/Depending on version/ Depending on country.
Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.

i Video control commands are accessible only through the touch screen.

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Select "**SOURCES**".
Select **Video** to start the video.
To remove the USB memory stick, press the pause button to stop the video, then remove the memory stick.
The system can play video files in the MPEG-4 Part 2, MPEG-2, MPEG-1, H.264, H.263, VP8, WMV and RealVideo formats.

Streaming Bluetooth®

Streaming allows you to listen to the audio feed from your smartphone.
The Bluetooth profile must be activated.
First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level).
Then adjust the volume of the audio system.
If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

i Once connected in streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.
Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audio books/podcasts).
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of the Apple® player.

Information and advice

The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices and Apple® players via the USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.
Devices are managed using the audio system controls.
Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, if compatible.
The audio system will only play audio files with ".wma", ".aac", ".flac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions, at bit rates between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.
All ".wma" files must be standard WMA 9 files.
The supported sampling rates are 32, 44 and 48 KHz.
To avoid reading and display problems, we recommend choosing file names less than 20 characters long that do not contain any special characters (e.g. “ ? . ; ù).
Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

i We recommend using the original USB cable for the portable device.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Consult the telephone user guide and the service provider to check which services are available.

i The Bluetooth function must be activated and the telephone configured as "Visible to all” (in the telphone settings).

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system),

ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

If the pairing procedure fails, we recommend deactivating and then reactivating the Bluetooth function on the telephone.

Procedure from the telephone

Select the system name in the list of detected devices.
In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

Procedure from the system

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
Press "**Bluetooth search**".
Or
Select "**Search**".
The list of detected telephones is displayed.
Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:
– "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
– "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of audio files on the telephone),
– "**Mobile internet data**".

The "**Mobile internet data**" profile must be activated for connected navigation, after first activating smartphone connection sharing.

Select one or more profiles.
Press "**OK**" to confirm.
Depending on the type of telephone, you may by prompted to accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

The ability of the system to connect just one profile depends on the telephone.
All three profiles may connect by default.

The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Visit the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Automatic reconnection

On returning to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds after switching on the ignition, the pairing is established automatically (Bluetooth activated).
To modify the connection profile:
Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.
Press the "Details" button.
Select one or more profiles.
Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Managing paired telephones

This function lets you connect or disconnect a device or delete a pairing.
Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.
Press on the name of the telephone selected in the list to disconnect it.
Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone

Select the basket at top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.
Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

Make a short press on the steering mounted telephone button to accept an incoming call.

And

Make a long press

on the steering mounted telephone button to reject the call.

Or

Select "**End call**" on the touch screen.

Making a call

Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.

Park the vehicle.

Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.

Press "**Call" to start the call.**

Calling a contact

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Or press and hold

the steering mounted telephone button.

Select "**Contact**".

Select the desired contact from the displayed list.

Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Or

Press and hold

the steering mounted telephone button.

Select "**Calls**".

Select the desired contact from the displayed list.

It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Managing contacts/entries

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Select "**Contact**".

Select "**Create**" to add a new contact.

Press the "**Telephone**" tab to enter the contact's telephone number(s).

Press the "**Address**" tab to enter the contact's address(es).

Press the "**Email**" tab to enter the contact's email address(es).

Press "**OK**" to save.

Press this button to sort contacts by Surname+first name or by First name+surname.

The "**Email**" function allows email addresses to be entered for a contact, but the system is not able to send emails.

Managing messages

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Messages**" to display the list of messages.

Select the "**All**", "**Incoming**" or "**Sent**" tab.

Select the details of the message chosen in one of the lists.

Press "**Answer**" to send a quick message stored in the system.

Press "**Call" to start the call.**

Press " **Play**" to listen to the message.

! Access to "**Messages**" depends on the compatibility between the smartphone and the onboard system.
Some smartphones retrieve messages or email messages more slowly than others.

Managing quick messages

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Quick messages**" to display the list of messages.
Select the "**Delayed**", "**My arrival**", "**Not available**" or "**Other**" tab, enabling you to create new messages.
Press "**Create**" to write a new message.
Select the message chosen in one of the lists.
Press "**Transfer**" to select one or more recipients.
Press " **Play**" to start playing the message.

Managing email

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Email**" to display the list of messages.
Select the "**Incoming**", "**Sent**" or "**Not read**" tab.
Select the message chosen in one of the lists.
Press " **Play**" to start playing the message.

! Access to email messages depends on the compatibility between the smartphone and the onboard system.

Settings

Audio settings

Press **Settings** to display the main page.
Select "**Audio settings**".
Then select "**Ambience**", "**Position**"; "**Sound**", "**Voice**" or "**Ringtone**".
OK Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

i The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys© system) uses audio processing to adjust the sound quality according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.
Available only with the front and rear speaker configuration.

i The **Ambience** setting (choice of 6 ambiences) and the **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** sound settings are different and independent for each audio source.
Activate or deactivate "**Loudness**".
The "**Position**" settings (All passengers, Driver and Front only) are common to all sources.
Activate or deactivate "**Touch tones**", "**Volume linked to speed**" and "**Auxiliary input**".

i Onboard audio: Arkamys Sound Staging© optimises the sound distribution inside the passenger compartment.

Configuring profiles

Press **Settings** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Setting of the profiles**".
Select "**Profile 1**", "**Profile 2**", "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".
Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Press this button to add a photograph to the profile.

Insert a USB memory stick containing the photograph in the USB port.

Select the photograph.

OK Press "**OK**" to accept the transfer of the photograph.

OK Press "**OK**" again to save the settings.

The location for the photograph is square; the system reshapes the original photograph if in another format.

00.0 Press this button to reset the selected profile.

Resetting the selected profile activates the English language by default.

Select a "**Profile**" (1 or 2 or 3) to link "**Audio settings**" with it.

Select "**Audio settings**".

Then select "**Ambience**", "**Position**"; "**Sound**", "**Voice**" or "**Ringtone**".

OK Press "**OK**" to save the selected profile's settings.

Modifying system settings

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Screen configuration**".

Select "**Animation**".

Activate or deactivate:**Automatic scrolling**

Select "**Brightness**".

Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or the instrument panel.

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**System settings**".

Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Select "**Factory settings**" to restore the initial settings.

Resetting the system to "Factory settings" activates English and degrees Fahrenheit and deactivates summer time.

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the various modules installed in the system.

Selecting the language

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Languages**" to change the language.

Setting the date

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Date**".

Press this button to set the date.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Select the display format for the date.

Time and date setting is only available if "GPS synchronisation" is deactivated.

Setting the time

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Time**".

Press this button to set the time using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Press this button to set the time zone.

Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).

Activate or deactivate summer time (+1 hour).

Activate or deactivate GPS synchronisation (UTC).

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

The system may not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Colour schemes

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the colour scheme is only possible when the **vehicle is stationary**.

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Select "**Color schemes**".

Select a colour scheme in the list then press "**OK**" to confirm.

Whenever the colour scheme is changed, the system restarts, temporarily displaying a black screen.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the system.

Navigation

I cannot enter the navigation address.
The address is not recognised.
► Use the "intuitive method" by pressing the "Search…" button at the bottom of the "Navigation" page.

The route calculation is not successful.
The route settings may conflict with the current location (for example, if toll roads are excluded but the vehicle is on a toll road).
► Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.

I do not receive "Danger zone" alerts.
You have not subscribed to the online services option.
► If you have subscribed to the option:
- a few days may elapse before the service is activated,
- services may not be selected in the system menu,
- online services are not active ("TOMTOM TRAFFIC" not shown on the map).

The POIs do not appear.
The POIs have not been selected.
► Set the zoom level to 600 ft (200 m) or select POIs in the POI list.

The "Danger zone" audible warning feature is not working.
The audible warning is not active or the volume is too low.
► Activate the audible warning in the "Navigation" menu and check the voice volume in the sound settings.

The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.
The route settings do not take account of TMC messages.
► Configure the "Traffic info " function in the route settings list (Without, Manual or Automatic).

I receive a warning about a "Danger area" that is not on my route.
As well as providing guided navigation, the system announces all "Danger areas" positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for "Danger areas" located on nearby or parallel roads.
► Zoom the map to show the exact location of the "Danger area". You can select "On the route" to stop receiving warnings or decrease the warning duration.

Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.

On starting, a few minutes may elapse before the system begins to receive traffic information.
► Wait until traffic information is being received correctly (traffic information icons shown on the map).
In certain countries, only major routes (motorways, etc.) are listed for the traffic information.
This is perfectly normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The altitude is not displayed.
On starting, GPS initialisation may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.
► Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.
Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel, etc.) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.
This behaviour is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.
My navigation is no longer connected.
During start-up and in certain geographical areas, the connection may be unavailable.
► Check that the online services are activated (settings, contract).

Radio

The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the station presets are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).
The vehicle is too far from the selected station's transmitter, or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.
► Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
The aerial is missing or has been damaged (for example while entering a car wash or underground car park).
► Have the aerial checked by a dealer.
The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) is blocking reception, including in RDS mode.
This is a perfectly normal phenomenon, and is not indicative of an audio system malfunction.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.
The name of the radio station changes.
The station is no longer received or its name has changed in the list.
Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example).
The system interprets these details as the station name.
► Press the "Update list" button in the "Radio stations" secondary menu.

Media

Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).
Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the cataloguing time).
► Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
There may be an extended pause after inserting a USB stick.
The system reads a variety of data (folder, title, artist, etc.). This can take from a few seconds to a few minutes.
This is perfectly normal.
Some characters in information about the currently playing media may not be displayed correctly.
The audio system is unable to process certain types of character.
► Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.
The connected device does not automatically launch playback.
► Start playback from the device.
Track names and playing times are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.
The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.

Telephone

I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.
The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.
► Check that the telephone has Bluetooth switched on.
► Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
► Deactivate then reactivate the telphone's Bluetooth function.
The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.
► You can check that your telephone is compatible on the Brand's website (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.
The volume depends on both the system and the telephone.
► Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.
► Reduce the ambient noise level (close windows, reduce ventilation, slow down, etc.).
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.
The options for synchronising contacts are: synchronise the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronisations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.
► Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.
Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.
► Modify the telephone directory display settings.
The system does not receive SMS.
SMS text messages cannot be sent to the system in Bluetooth mode.

Settings

When the treble and bass settings are changed, the ambience is deselected.
When the ambience is changed, the treble and bass settings are reset.
Selecting an ambience imposes the treble and bass settings, and vice versa.
► Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When the balance settings are changed, the distribution is deselected.
When the distribution setting is changed, the balance settings are deselected.
Selecting a distribution setting imposes the balance settings, and vice versa.
► Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between audio sources.
To allow for optimal listening quality, the sound settings can be tailored to different audio sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.
► Check that the sound settings are appropriate to the sources listened to. We recommend setting the sound functions (Bass:, Treble:, Balance) to the middle position, setting the musical ambience to "None", setting loudness correction to "Active" in USB mode and "Inactive" in Radio mode.
► In all cases, after applying sound settings, adjust the volume level on the portable device (to a high level) first. Then adjust the volume level on the audio system.
When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.
When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery.
The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.
► Start the vehicle's engine to increase the charge of the battery.
The date and time cannot be set.
Setting of the date and time is only available if the synchronisation with the satellites is deactivated.
► Settings menu / Options / Time-Date setting. Select the "Time" tab and deactivate the "GPS synchronisation" (UTC).

3D digital instrument panel 7

A

ABS 62
Accessories 26, 58, 84
Active Safety Brake 112–114
AdBlue® 15, 146
AdBlue® tank 147
Additive, Diesel 144
Adjusting headlamps 54
Adjusting head restraints 30
Adjusting seat 30–31
Adjusting the air distribution 44–46
Adjusting the air flow 44–46
Adjusting the date 195, 218
Adjusting the height and reach of
the steering wheel 33
Adjusting the lumbar support 31
Adjusting the seat angle 31
Adjusting the temperature 44–46
Adjusting the time 195, 218
Advice on care and maintenance 148
Advice on driving 6, 81
Affaire version 182
Airbags 66, 68, 70
Airbags, curtain 67–68
Airbags, front 67–68, 70
Airbags, lateral 67–68
Air conditioning 43, 43–44
Air conditioning, automatic 44–46
Air conditioning, digital 47
Air conditioning, manual 43–44
Air intake 46
Air vents 42
Alarm 26–28
Android Auto connection 210
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 62
Anti-pinch 28–29, 47–48
Antitheft / Immobiliser 23
Apple CarPlay connection 191, 209
Applications 210
Armrest 37
Armrest, front 38–39
Armrest, rear 39
Assistance call 59–60
Assistance, emergency braking 62, 113
Audible warning 61
Audio streaming (Bluetooth) 190, 214

B

Battery 139, 169
Battery, 12 V 144, 169–172
Battery, charging 170–171
Battery, remote control 23–25
Bicycle carrier 26
Blanking screen (snow shield) 133, 135
Blind, panoramic roof 47–48
Blind spot monitoring system, active 120
Blind spot sensors 119–120
BlueHDi 15, 174
Bluetooth (hands-free) 192–193, 214–215
Bluetooth (telephone) 192–193, 214–215
Bodywork 149
Bonnet 141
Boot 20, 25
Boot light 40
Brake discs 145–146
Brake lamps 164–166
Brakes 145–146
Braking assistance system 62
Braking, automatic emergency 112–114
Braking, dynamic emergency 86–88
Brightness 194
Bulbs (changing) 160–161, 164–166

C

Cable, audio 213
Cable, Jack 213
Capacity, fuel tank 131–132
Cap, fuel filler 131–132
Care of the bodywork 149
CD 190
CD, MP3 190
Central locking 20–22
Changing a bulb 160–161, 164–166
Changing a fuse 166–168
Changing a wheel 150, 157–158
Changing a wiper blade 55–56
Changing the remote control battery 24–25
CHECK 17

Checking the engine oil level 14
Checking the levels 142–143
Checking tyre pressures
(using the kit) 151, 153–156
Checks 141–142, 144–146
Checks, routine 144–146
Child lock 79
Children 65, 74–76
Children (safety) 79
Child seats 65, 68–72, 79
Child seats, conventional 71
Child seats, ISOFIX 74–76
Cleaning (advice) 148–149
Closing the boot 20, 25
Closing the doors 20–22, 25
Collision Risk Alert 112–113
Commercial 182
Connected applications 210
Connection, Bluetooth 192–193,
210–211, 214–215
Connection, MirrorLink 191–192
Connection, Wi-Fi network 211
Connectivity 209
Container, AdBlue® 147
Control, electric windows 28–29
Control, emergency boot release 26
Control, emergency door 23
Control, heated seats 32
Controls, steering mounted 93–96
Control stalk, lighting 50
Control stalk, wipers 54–57
Courtesy lamps 48–49
Cover, load space 40–42
Cruise control 103, 105–110, 112
Cruise control, adaptive 107–108
Cruise control by speed limit recognition 103
Cruise control, dynamic with
Stop function 103, 108–110
Cup holder 37

D

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) -
Digital radio 189, 213
Date (setting) 195, 218
Daytime running lamps 51, 161–162
Deactivating the passenger airbag 67, 70
Deactivation of DSC (ESC) 62
Deadlocking 20, 22
Defrosting 47
Demisting 47
Demisting, rear 33–34
Demisting, rear screen 33–34
Denon (audio system) 41–42
Dials and gauges 7
Digital instrument panel 7
Dimensions 181–182
Dipstick 14, 142
Direction indicators 53, 161–166
Display screen, instrument panel 97
Doors 25
Driver’s attention warning 115
Driver Sport Pack 96–97
Driving 81
Driving abroad 51
Driving aids camera (warnings) 101
Driving aids (recommendations) 100
Driving economically 6
Driving positions (storing) 32
Dynamic pack 96–97
Dynamic (sport) 96–97
Dynamic stability control (DSC) 62

E

EBFD 62
Eco-driving (advice) 6
Economy mode 139
Electric windows 28
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) 62
Emergency braking assistance (EBA) 62
Emergency call 59–60
Emergency switching off 85
Emergency warning lamps 41, 58
Emissions control system, SCR 16, 146
Energy economy mode 139
Engine compartment 141–142
Engine, Diesel 131, 142, 174, 179
Engine, petrol 141, 177, 179
Engines 176–177, 179
Environment 6, 24
ESC (electronic stability control) 62

F

Fatigue detection 114–115
Filling the AdBlue® tank 147
Filling the fuel tank 131–132
Filter, air 144
Filter, oil 144
Filter, particle 144
Filter, passenger compartment 43, 144
Fitting a wheel 158–160
Fitting roof bars 140
Fittings, boot 40
Fittings, interior 37
Flap, fuel filler 131–132
Flashing indicators 53
Fluid, brake 143
Fluid, engine coolant 143
Foglamp, rear 50, 164–166
Foglamps, front 50, 163
Foglamps, rear 50
Folding the rear seats 35–36
Frequency (radio) 212
Fuel 6, 131
Fuel consumption 6
Fuel tank 131
Fusebox, dashboard 166
Fusebox, engine compartment 166, 168
Fuses 166–168

G

Gauge, fuel 131–132
Gearbox, automatic 89–91, 93–99, 145, 170
Gearbox, manual 89–90, 98–99, 145
Gear lever, automatic gearbox 91, 95
Gear lever, manual gearbox 89–90
Gear shift indicator ~ Gear efficiency indicator 97
Glove box, refrigerated 37
G.P.S. 206

H

Hazard warning lamps 41, 58
headlamp adjustment 54
Headlamp adjustment 54
Headlamps, automatic dipping 52–53
Headlamps, automatic illumination 51
Headlamps, dipped beam 161–162
Headlamps, halogen 54, 161
Headlamps, main beam 161–162
Headlamp wash 55
Head restraints, front 30
Head restraints, rear 35–37
Heating 42–44
Hill start assist 89
Horn 61

I

Ignition 46, 84, 216
Ignition on 84
Immobiliser, electronic 23, 82
Indicator, AdBlue® range 15
Indicator, coolant temperature 15
Indicator, engine oil level 14
Indicators, direction 53
Inflating tyres 145, 183
Inflating tyres and accessories (using the kit) 151, 153–156
Infrared camera 101
Instrument panel 7, 17–18, 102
Instrument panels 7
Internet browser 207, 210
ISOFIX 76
ISOFIX mountings 74–75

J

Jack 150–151, 157, 213
Jump starting 170

K

Key 19–21, 23, 25
Key, electronic 21–22
Keyless Entry and Starting 21–23, 84–85
Key not recognised 85

Key with remote control 19–21, 82
Kit, hands-free 192–193, 214–215
Kit, puncture repair 150, 154–156
Kit, temporary puncture repair 40, 150–151, 153–157

L

Labels 4
Labels, identification 183
Lams with Full LED technology 54
Lane departure warning active 115, 120
LEDs - Light-emitting diodes 51
Level, brake fluid 143
Level, Diesel additive 144
Level, engine coolant 15, 143
Level, engine oil 14, 142
Level, headlamp wash 55
Levels and checks 141–143
Level, screenwash fluid 55, 143
Light-emitting diodes - LEDs 51
Lighting 49
Lighting dimmer 17
Lighting, exterior 50
Lighting, guide-me home 20, 53
Lighting, interior 48–49
Lighting, mood 49
Lighting, welcome 53
Loading 140
Load reduction mode 140
Locating your vehicle 20
Locking 23
Long objects, transporting 39
Low fuel level 131–132
Luggage retaining strap 40
Lumbar 31, 33

M

Maintenance (advice) 148
Maintenance, routine 101, 144
Manoeuvring aids (recommendations) 100
Map reading lamps 48–49
Markings, identification 183
Massage function 33
Mat 38, 101
Menu 191
Menus (audio) 186–187, 199–200
Messages 216
Messages, quick 217
Mirror, rear view 34
Mirrors, door 33–34, 119
Misfuel prevention 132
Mountings, ISOFIX 74–75

N

Navigation 204–206
Navigation, connected 207–209
Net, high load retaining 42
Number plate lamps 166

O

Obstacle detection 121
Oil change 142
Oil consumption 142
OIl, engine 142
On-board tools 150–151
Opening the bonnet 141
Opening the boot 20–21, 25
Opening the doors 19, 21, 25

P

Pads, brake 145–146
Paint 149, 183
Paint colour code 183
Panoramic glass sunroof 47–48
Parcel shelf, rear 40–41
Park Assist 124–125, 127
Parking brake 85, 145–146
Parking brake, electric 86–88, 145
Parking sensors, audible and visual 121
Parking sensors, front 121
Parking sensors, rear 121
Personalisation 7
Plates, identification 183
Player, Apple® 190, 214
Player, USB 189, 213
Port, USB 37, 39, 189, 209, 213
Pressures, tyres 145, 153, 157, 160, 183
Pre-tensioning seat belts 65

Priming pump 174
Priming the fuel system 174
Profiles 194, 217
Protecting children 67–70, 72, 74–76, 79
Puncture 151, 153–157

R

Radar (warnings) 101
Radio 187–188, 190, 211–212
Radio, digital (Digital Audio Broadcasting - DAB) 189, 213
Range, AdBlue® 15
RDS 188, 212
Rear screen, demisting 47
Recharging the battery 170–171
Recirculation, air 44–46
Recovery 173–174
Reduction of electrical load 140
Regeneration of the particle filter 144
Reinitialisation of the under-inflation detection system 100
Reinitialising the remote control 24–25
Reminder, key in ignition 84
Remote control 19–23
Removing a wheel 158–160
Removing the mat 38
Replacing bulbs 160–161, 164–166
Replacing fuses 166–168
Replacing the air filter 144
Replacing the oil filter 144
Replacing the passenger compartment filter 144
Reservoir, screenwash 143
Reset trip 18
Rev counter 7
Reversing camera 101, 122–123
Reversing lamp 164–166
Roof bars 140
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 174

S

Safety, children 67–70, 72, 74–76, 79
Saturation of the particle filter (Diesel) 144
Screen, cold climate 133
Screen menu map 191
Screenwash 55
Screenwash, rear 55
SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) 16, 146
Seat belts 64–65, 71
Seat belts, rear 65
Seat, rear bench 35–36
Seats, electric 31
Seats, front 30–32
Seats, heated 32
Seats, rear 35–36, 69
Selector, gear 93–96
Sensors (warnings) 101
Serial number, vehicle 183
Service indicator 14, 17
Servicing 14, 144, 145
Settings, system 194, 218
Sidelamps 51, 161–162, 164–166
Ski flap 39
Snow chains 100, 133
Socket, 12 V accessory 37, 39–40
Socket, 230 V 37
Socket, auxiliary 190, 213
Socket, Jack 37, 213
Sockets, audio 39
Speed limiter 103–105
Speed limit recognition 102
Speedometer 7, 102
Spotlamps, side 53
Stability control (ESC) 62–63
Starting a Diesel engine 131
Starting the engine 82–83
Starting the vehicle 84–85, 91, 93–96
Starting using another battery 85, 170
Station, radio 187–188, 211–212
Stay, bonnet 141
Steering mounted controls, audio 185, 199
Steering wheel, adjustment 33
Stickers, customising ~ Stickers, expressive 149
Stopping the vehicle 84–85, 91, 93–96
Stop & Start 18, 43, 47, 97–99, 131, 141, 144, 169, 172
Storage 37–40
Storage wells 40
Storing driving positions 32
Stowing rings 40
Sunshine sensor 43

Suspension 145
Switching off the engine 82–83
Synchronising the remote control 24–25

T

Tables of fuses 166–168
Tank, fuel 131–132
Technical data 177, 179
Telephone 192–194, 214–217
Temperature, coolant 15
Time (setting) 195, 218
TMC (Traffic info) 206
Tools 150, 150–151, 157
Topping-up AdBlue® 147
Top Tether (fixing) 74
Total distance recorder 17
Towball, quickly detachable 134–139
Towbar 63, 134
Towbar with quickly detachable
towball 134–139
Towed loads 176–177, 179
Towing another vehicle 173–174
Towing eye 40
Traction control (ASR) 62
Traffic information (TMC) 206
Trailer 63, 134
Trailer stability assist (TSA) 63
Trajectory control systems 62
Triangle, warning 41
Trip computer 18
Trip distance recorder 17
Tyres 145, 183
Tyre under-inflation detection 99, 153, 157

U

Under-inflation (detection) 99
Unlocking 19, 21
Updating the date 195, 218
Updating the time 195, 218
USB 39, 189–190, 209, 213

V

Ventilation 42–44
Video 213
Visiopark 1 122
Voice commands 201–204

W

Warning and indicator lamps 8
Warning lamp, driver"s seat belt
not fastened 65
Warning lamps 8, 17
Warning lamp, seat belts 65
Warnings and indicators 8–9
Washing 101
Washing (advice) 148–149
Weights 176–177, 179
Welcome lighting 53
Wheel, spare 40, 145, 150–151, 157–158
Window controls 28–29
Windscreen wipers 55–56
Wiper blades (changing) 55–56
Wiper, rear 55
Wipers 54, 57
Wipers, automatic rain sensitive 56–57

Automobiles PEUGEOT declares, in accordance with the provisions of the European legislation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End-of-Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this legislation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.
Reproduction or translation of all or part of this document is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles PEUGEOT.

4D CONCEPT
GROUPE MAURY IMPRIMEUR
PEFC 10-31-1282
IMPRIM'VERT®

Printed in the EU
05-20

PEUGEOT

AUTOMOBILES PEUGEOT - Siège Social : 7, rue Henri Sainte-Claire Déville - 92500 RUEIL-MALMAISON
http://www.peugeot.com
Société anonyme au capital de 172.711.770 € - R.C.S.NANTERRE : 552 144 503

www.peugeot.com

ANG. 20308.0040